WALTER RIPMAN

# A FIRST ENGLISH BOOK



EESTI KIRJANDUSE SELTS

891.76

# A FIRST ENGLISH BOOK

Est. A-16938

# A
# FIRST ENGLISH BOOK

BY
WALTER RIPMAN

EESTIKEELSE SÕNASTIKU JA HÄÄLDAMIS-
ÕPETUSEGA VARUSTANUD
J. SILVET

N. V. Veski
dipl. insener

NELJAS, TÄIENDATUD TRÜKK

EESTI KIRJANDUSE SELTSI KIRJASTUS
TARTU, 1935

TARTU ÜLIKOOLI
RAAMATUKOGU

d. 35567089

E. K.-Ü. „Postimehe“ trükk, Tartus 1935

## Preface to the Fourth Edition.

It is very gratifying that this First English Book should now be in its fourth Estonian edition, for it shows that it has found its way into many schools and has helped many Estonian boys and girls over the first difficulties of the English language.

It is now just thirty years since I wrote this book and during that time it has made its way into many countries, from China to Chile and from Sweden to Hungary. Indeed I doubt whether any schoolbook has reached so many lands as this one.

It was only possible because I adopted what is commonly known as the direct method, according to which instruction in a language is impasted with a minimum of translation. In order to bring this about it is necessary to select the vocabulary with great care and to ensure that when a new word has been learnt it should be repeated until it is firmly fixed in the mind.

The direct method lays great stress on the oral use of the language and emphasises the importance of a good pronunciation. Long experience in the teaching of different languages has convinced me that this end is best attained by a judicious use of phone-

tics, for which reason I have made use of the mode of transcription recommended by the International Phonetic Association. To the teacher I may be permitted to recommend my book on "English Phonetics" together with the companion volume "Specimens of English".

I understand that in most Estonian schools English has now been made the first foreign language, and that conditions for the teaching of it have become much more favourable. I anticipate with pleasure an increasing demand for this book; I sincerely hope that Estonian teachers will find it renders their work easier and more agreeable, and I hope that the boys and girls will find it a reliable key to the vast treasurehouse of English literature.

**Walter Ripman.**

London,
October 1934.

## Names for Boys.

Adam, Albert, Alexander, Alfred, Allan, Andrew, Archibald, Arthur, Basil, Cecil, Charles, Christopher, Daniel, David, Edgar, Edmund, Edward, Edwin, Ernest, Francis, Frank, Frederick, George, Gerald, Guy, Harold, Hector, Henry, Herbert, Horace, Hubert, Hugh, James, John, Joseph, Julius, Leonard, Lionel, Martin, Matthew, Michael, Oliver, Paul, Percy, Peter, Philip, Ralph, Randolph, Reginald, Richard, Robert, Robin, Rowland, Samuel, Sidney, Stephen, Thomas, Walter, William.

## Names for Girls.

Ada, Agnes, Alice, Ann, Beatrice, Bertha, Beryl, Blanche, Camilla, Caroline, Catherine, Cecilia, Charlotte, Constance, Dorothy, Edith, Eileen, Elizabeth, Ellen, Elsie, Emily, Enid, Ethel, Eva, Evelyn, Faith, Florence, Frances, Gertrude, Gladys, Grace, Gwendolen, Helen, Hilda, Hope, Ida, Iris, Isabel, Jane, Jennie, Jessica, Leila, Lily, Louisa, Lucy, Mabel, Margaret, Marion, Mary, Maud, May, Mildred, Minnie, Muriel, Nora, Olive, Phyllis, Rhoda, Rose, Ruby, Ruth, Sarah, Sophia, Stella, Sybil, Sylvia, Victoria, Violet, Winifred.

## Family Names.

Adamson, Baker, Barber, Black, Brown, Butcher, Butler, Carpenter, Carter, Chandler, Constable, Cook, Cutler, Davidson, Draper, Fowler, Fuller, Gardener, Glover, Green, Grey, Hunter, Jameson, Johnson, Mason, Miller, Painter, Peterson, Richardson, Robertson, Robinson, Shepherd, Skinner, Smith, Spicer, Stephenson, Tailor, Tanner, Thomson, Turner, Walker, Weaver, White, Williamson.



FIRST PART.

## 1. (I) One; first lesson.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Tom. Henry.** | **Mary. Jane.** |
| **a boy** a boy. | **a girl** a girl. |
| Tom **is** a boy. | Mary is a girl. |
| **Who** is a boy? | *Tom* is a boy. |
| **What** is Tom? | Tom is a *boy.* |
| | **He** is a *boy.* |
| What is Mary? | Mary is a *girl.* |
| | **She** is a *girl.* |
| What **are you,** Tom? | **I am** a boy. |

Tom **and** Henry are boys.
What are you, Tom and Henry? **We are** boys.
Mary and Jane are girls. **They are** girls.
Who are girls? Mary and Jane are girls.

A boy, a **man**; a girl, a **woman**.
**The** man is the **father**. The woman is the **mother**.
The father is a man. The mother is a woman.

---

boy *is a noun (substantive)* mother *is a noun (substantive)*
a *is the indefinite article*
the *is the definite article*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *singular:* | a boy, a girl | the boy, the girl |
| *plural:* | boys, girls | the boys, the girls |

| | *singular* | *plural* |
|---|---|---|
| | (1) I am | we are |
| | (2) you are | you are |
| | (3) he, she is | they are |

1. A. *Pronounce:* Tom, mother, woman, who, one; father, man, Jane, what; they; girl, first.

1. B. (1) What is Mary? (2) Who is a girl? (3) Who are girls? (4) Who is a boy? (5) Who are boys? (6) Who is a woman? (7) What is the father? (8) Who is a man? (9) What is Henry? (10) What are you, Mary and Jane?

1. C. (1) Tom is — —. (2) The father is — —. (3) Tom and Henry are —. (4) I am — —. (5) We are —. (6) The mother is — —. (7) You are — —. (8) Jane is — —.

1. D. (1) — — a boy. (2) — — — a woman. (3) — and — — girls. (4) — am — —. (5) — and — — boys. (6) — — — a man.

## 2. (II) Two; second lesson.

Henry **has** a father. **Have** you a father, Henry? **Yes,** I have a father. Mary and Jane, have you a mother? Yes, we have a mother.

Have the father and mother one **son**? **No,** they have two sons. The first son is Tom, the second is Henry.

They have two **daughters.** Who are the daughters? Mary is the first daughter and Jane is the second. Is Mary a son **or** a daughter? She is a daughter, she is **not** a son. She is a **child**; Tom is a child **too.** The father is a man, he is not a child.

---

is, has *are verbs*
I, she, they *are pronouns*

| *singular* | *plural* |
|---|---|
| (1) I have | we have |
| (2) you have | you have |
| (3) he, she has | they have |

2. A. *Pronounce:* two, who, no; mother, son; daughter; child, I; girl, first; is, has, sons, daughters.

2. B. (1) Who have two sons? (2) Have they daughters too? Who is (3) the first son? (4) the second daughter? (5) What is Mary? (6) Who is not a child? (7) Who is not a woman? (8) Who is not a daughter? (9) Is the mother a child? (10) Has the mother a child? (11) Is Henry a son or a daughter? (12) Is the mother a man or a woman?

2. C. (1) The mother has two — and two —. (2) Henry is —. (3) Tom is not —; he is —. (4) Jane is not —; she is —. (5) Mary and Jane are —. (6) Jane has —; she has — too.

## 3. (III) Three; third lesson.

The father has children. Has he three sons? No, he has two sons. Tom and Henry are **his** sons; the girls are his daughters. The children have a mother too; they are **her** children. The girls are not her sons. Who are her sons?

The father has a **house.** Has the father two houses? No, he has one house. He and the mother and the children **live in** his house.

The father is **big, but** Henry is **small.**

Is the house **very** big? No, **it** is not; it is not a big house, but a small house.

**Do** you live in the house, Henry? Yes, I do.

And **where** do you live, Jane? I live in the house too. We **all** live **there. Does** Tom live there too? Yes, he does.

---

big *is an adjective*

in *is a preposition* but *is a conjunction*

*sing.*: child house

*plur.*: children houses

he: his she: her three: third

Where? There (in the house).

| | *sing.* | *plur.* |
|---|---|---|
| (1) | I do | we do |
| (2) | you do | you do |
| (3) | he *does* | they do |

Do you live there? Yes, I live there.
Yes, I do [live there].

---

3. A. *Pronounce:* he, we, she, three; first, third, girl, her; all, small; where, there; have, live; lives, does, has; house, houses; child, children.

3. B. The father has children. (1) Who are his sons? (2) Who are his daughters? (3) Where do they live? (4) Does the mother live there too? (5) Is his house very small? (6) Is the father small? (7) Who lives in the house? (8) Are all houses small? (9) Has the mother three daughters? (10) Who are her daughters? (11) Where is a boy? (12) Is Henry big or small? (13) Is Jane in the house? (14) Are all the children there? (15) Where are two girls?

3. C. (1) We live in —. (2) The mother is —, but Jane —. (3) Tom and Mary are —. (4) The boys are not —. (5) The father has —. (6) His children live —. (7) Henry is not —, but —. (8) He has —.

## 4. (IV) Four; fourth lesson.

**Twice** two are four (2×2=4).

**How many** children has the father? He has four. Not all his children are sons. How many sons has he? How many houses has he? He has **only** one.

The **parents** (father and mother) **love their** children, and they (the children) love their parents. The parents **work for** their children. Henry and Jane do not work; they **play** in the house or in the **garden.** The garden is not very big.

Do you **see** the parents? They are working **now**; the children are playing. **Whom** do you see? We see the parents and the children.

What are you doing, Tom? I am playing **with** Mary. With whom is he playing?

"Are you playing, boys (girls)?" No, we are working.

"Are you working in a garden?" No, we are **learning.**

"What are you learning, Margaret (William)? I am learning **English.** "What is she (he) learning? What are you all learning?" We are all learning English.

"What boys and girls do we see in the **picture?**" We see English boys and girls. Tom is an English

boy. Mary and Jane are English girls. "Where do they live?" They live in **England.**

---

a boy; *an* English boy
they: their four: fourth
whom *is the accusative of* who

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | see, | love, | play, | learn, | — | work. |
| he | sees, | loves, | plays, | learns, | — | works. |

(——————*s* = z——————) (*s* = s)

*present* { I work / I am working — I do not work / I am not working } *negative*

working *is the present participle of the verb* to work *(infinitive)*

| *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|
| England | English |

---

4. A. *Pronounce:* four, for, daughter; love, son, mother; work, first, learn; two, who, whom; English; boys, parents; works, plays.

4. B. (1) What is Tom doing? (2) With whom is Mary playing? (3) Where is she playing? (4) Is the father working or playing? (5) How many daughters has the mother? (6) Do you see the picture? (7) Does Tom love his father? (8) Who is not playing? (9) Who is learning? (10) Where do Tom and Henry live? (11) Where do English children live? (12) Is Henry an English boy? (13) Who is in the garden? (14) Who has only one house? (15) Are all the children sons? (16) For whom do the parents work? (17) With whom

is Mary playing? (18) What are you doing? (19) Where do you live? (20) What is twice two? (21) Where are the parents? (22) Who does not live in England?

4. C. *Example. Singular:* The boy plays in a garden.
*Plural:* The boys play in gardens.

(1) The child lives in a house. (2) The son has a mother. (3) I see an English boy. (4) He lives in England. (5) He works and plays there. (6) She has a son. (7) I am working in a garden. (8) He loves his child. (9) She works with her daughter. (10) He is playing with his son.

## 5. (V) Five; fifth lesson.

What is two **plus** three (2+3)?

Has the father a fifth child? No, he has only four children. Who is his fourth child?

How many houses are there in the picture? **There is** only one house. How many children are there? **There are** four.

Henry **says**: "**This** is **my** father; and he is **your** father too, Mary. There's (there is) a boy in the garden; **that** boy is my **brother** Tom. My parents are **good to me**; they are good to you too, aren't they (are they not), Jane?"

"Yes, Henry, **our** parents are very good to all **of us**, and **so** we love **them** very **much**, don't we?"

"Yes, we do."

What is Mary's mother doing? She's (she is) working in the garden. Do you see **her**? Who is with her?

Do you see Henry's **dog** Jack? Henry doesn't (does not) see **him**; so he **asks** his **sister** Jane this **question**: "Where is my dog? Do you see him?"

Jane **answers**: "Yes, Henry, your dog's (dog is) in the garden, there, **behind** the **tree**". That is her **answer** to his question.

---

The father (has a house) *(nominative)*.
(I see) the father *(accusative)*.
(That is) the father's (house).
(That is the house) of the father } *(genitive)*.

*personal pronouns and adjectives:*

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *nom.:* | I | you | he | she | we | you | they |
| *acc.:* | me | you | him | her | us | you | them |
| *adj.:* | my | your | his | her | our | your | their |

There is a boy in the garden.
There are boys in the garden.

this *and* that five: fifth
We do not, we don't; do we not? don't we?
to say: he says

| *verb* | *noun* |
|---|---|
| answer | answer |

---

5. A. *Pronounce:* five, live; four, fourth, five, fifth; our, four, your; who, no, so; is, this, has, us; he works, he plays, he asks, he answers; question, answer.

5. B. (1) Who loves his parents very much? (2) Where is Tom's mother? (3) With whom is Tom playing?

(4) Who is behind the tree? (5) Who sees him? (6) Who does not? (7) Who answers Henry's question? (8) Who is very good to Jane? (9) Who loves her very much? (10) Does she love only one of her children? (11) Where are your parents, Mary and Jane? (12) With whom do you play? (13) Who works for you? (14) How many dogs do you see in the picture? (15) Where is this dog? (16) Is there a man in the garden? (17) Who is this man? (18) Who are his daughters? (19) To whom is he good? (20) Who asks a question? (21) What is the question? (22) What is Jane's answer?

5. C. *Example. With nouns:* The man sees the dog.
*With pronouns:* He sees him.

(1) The father loves his children. (2) The mother is working in the garden. (3) Jane is playing with Mary. (4) The boy sees the trees. (5) The tree is not behind the house.

5. D. (1) Jane says: I love — parents, — brothers and — sister; I love — all, and they love —.

(2) Jane and Mary say: — love — brothers, and they love —.

## 6. (VI) Six; sixth lesson.

What are twice three?

The parents and children are a **family.** How many are there in this family? There are six; it is a family of six.

Is Jack a boy? No, he is a dog. He is not a very **big** dog.

A dog has four **legs**; a boy has two legs and two **arms.** We **walk** with our legs; the dog walks with his.

Where is Jack? He is **lying on** the **grass** behind that tree. He **often** lies there. And where is the tree? It is in the garden. But where is the garden? The garden is **by** the father's house. The father is **standing** on the grass.

What is Jack doing? He is **eating.** What does a dog eat? He eats **biscuits**; they are his **food.** What is this dog eating? He is eating a biscuit. Who **gives** him food? Henry does that, **because** Jack is his dog. Where is there food? There is food in the house.

---

| *nominative* | *accusative* | *dative* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| The mother gives | food | to her children. | |
| She gives | food | to them. | *acc.* |
| She gives | | them | food. |

to lie: he lies, he is lying.
to give: he gives, he is giving.
to stand: he stands, he is standing.

---

6. A. *Pronounce:* six, sixth; all, small, walk, daughter, what; often, answer, biscuit, who; food, good; give, live, five.

6. B. (1) How many legs has a man? (2) Is the father lying on the grass? (3) How many children

are there in this family? (4) Who gives you food? (5) Where do you play very often? (6) What does a dog eat? (7) What do you often eat? (8) How many arms has a boy? (9) What do we walk with (= With what do we walk)? (10) Where is there a big tree? (11) How many are there in your family? (12) Is it a small family? (13) Is Jane a good daughter? (14) What are twice two?

6. C. **Draw** a dog, an arm, a biscuit.

6. D. (1) Henry does not see the dog, because —. (2) Jane answers the question, because —. (3) We love our parents, because —. (4) Henry gives food to Jack, because —.

6. E. (1) The garden is — the house. (2) The dog is lying — the grass. (3) Tom is playing — his brother. (4) The parents work — their children. (5) They are working — the garden. (6) The dog is — the tree. (7) Our parents are very good — us. (8) The father is standing — the grass.

6. F. *What prepositions are there in this lesson?*

## 7. (VII) Seven; seventh lesson.

What is one plus two plus four?

A **week** has seven **days**. Six of them are working days (or weekdays). The first day of the week is **Sunday**. We do not work on that day; but we work on the **other** days.

This boy's **name** is Tom. That girl's name is Jane; she is **called** Jane. What is the name of the second day of the week? It is **Monday.** What is the third called? It is called **Tuesday. Then** we have **Wednesday. Tell** me the names of the other days! They are **Thursday, Friday,** and **Saturday.**

On **which** days do you work?

Do you work all day? No, we only work **part** of the day. We work in the **morning;** we do not work in the **afternoon.** Where do you work? We work **at school. When** do you **go** to school? We go to school in the morning. Does Henry go to school? No, Henry plays with his sister and with his dog Jack; but his brother Tom goes to school. They all play in the afternoon.

---

Who? He, she (the man, the girl).
What? It (the house, the day).
Which girl, man, house, day? This or that girl, man, house, day.
When? Then (on Sunday, in the morning).

To go: he goes, he is going.
Tell! *is the imperative of* to tell.
Go! Give! *are imperatives too.*
My name is Tom = I am called Tom.
Called *is the past participle of* to call.

---

7. A. *Pronounce:* days, plays, says; call, all, small; Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday; good, food, afternoon, school; go, goes; do, does.

7. B. (1) Tell me the name of the third day of the week. (2) Which is the fifth? (3) Which is the second? (4) When do you work? (5) Where do you go in the morning? (6) What is a part of a week? (7) On which day do we not work? (8) Who is eating a biscuit? (9) What is his name? (10) Does Tom's father work all day? (11) What is this girl called? (12) What is the other girl's name? (13) Which day is the seventh day of the week? (14) Do you walk to school? (15) Where do you learn your lessons? (16) Have you very many lessons?

7. C. *Example* — 7, the 7th: seven, the seventh.

*(a)* 6, the 6th; *(b)* 3, the 3rd; *(c)* 5, the 5th; *(d)* 1, the 1st; *(e)* 4, the 4th; *(f)* 2, the 2nd.

7. D. Sunday is the first day of the week; Monday is, etc.

7. E. (1) I am called —; he —; you —; she —. (2) We go to school; I —; she —; they —. (3) She does not play at school; we —; you —; he —; they —. (4) They say that; we —; she —; I —. (5) You ask a question; she —; I —; he —.

## 8. (VIII) Eight; eighth lesson.

What are twice two? and twice four?

Where are we? We are in a **room.** This room has four **walls** and four **corners.** There are pictures on the walls. Tell me how many pictures there are. In one wall there is a **door.** How many corners has a door? We go **into** the

room by the door. We **open** the door; then the door is **open.** **Some** rooms have **more than** one door.

This room has more than one **window**; it has **several** windows. Are the windows open? The windows are not all open; two are **shut.** **Why** do we open the windows? Because the **air comes in** then. Air comes in **through** the open windows. What **also** comes in through the windows? **Light** also comes in.

What gives us light by day? The **sun** does that; it **shines** by day. Is the sun shining now? Do we see it at **night?** No, we do not. Have we **no** light at night? Yes, we have; the **moon** often shines then. Does it give more light than the sun? No, it doesn't give more, but **less.** It often gives very **little** light.

---

some light: no light

| *positive* | *comparative* |
|---|---|
| much | more |
| little | less |

to come: coming; to shine: shining

(*cp.* to give, No. 6)

I go *into* the room; now I am *in* the room.

| *verb* | *adjective* |
|---|---|
| open | open |

---

8. A. *Pronounce:* room, good, food, to, moon, afternoon; all, small, wall, walk; sun, some, come, son, mother; my, why, very, Sunday; light, night, daughter, eight; five, shine, twice; air, there, where.

8. B. (1) How many corners has a window? (2) Where do we see pictures? (3) Tell me how many windows there are in this room? (4) Is the door open? (5) What comes in through the windows? (6) When does the sun shine? (7) Through what do we go into a room? (8) Does the sun give less light than the moon? (9) Have we no air when the door is shut? (10) Are there no pictures in your house? (11) Where do we see several windows? (12) Tell me where there are some trees. (13) Are less than eight boys (girls) learning English? (14) Why does Henry give biscuits to Jack? (15) Why does Jane love her mother? (16) Does the sun give us much light?

8. C. *Example* — room: The room is part of the house. (1) wall; (2) morning; (3) door; (4) day.

8. D. *Example* — The boy is — the garden: The boy is in the garden.

(1) The garden is — the house. (2) The air comes — the windows — the room. (3) The moon shines — night. (4) Pictures are — the wall. (5) That dog is — a tree. (6) Our parents are good — us. (7) We go — the room — the door. (8) The sun gives us light — day.

## 9. (IX) Nine; ninth lesson.

Three **times** three are nine. What are three times two? Are there more or less than nine boys (girls) in this room?

Tom's father is called **Mr.**[1] John Robinson. He has a brother William and a sister Grace. Mr. William Robinson is Tom's **uncle**, and **Miss** Grace Robinson is his **aunt. Whose** aunt is she also? She is also the aunt of Tom's brother and sisters.

Mr. William Robinson has several children: he has two daughters, Edith and Agnes, and a son Frank. **These** are Tom's **cousins.** Who is Edith's uncle? **Mrs.**[2] William Robinson is Henry's aunt. Who is Frank's aunt? Tom is his uncle's **nephew;** Mary is her uncle's **niece.**

Mr. and Mrs. Arthur Robinson are the parents of Mr. J. Robinson, Mr. W. Robinson, and Miss Robinson. The children in our picture are **young;** so are you. Mr. Arthur Robinson is **quite old;** so is his **wife.** These are the **grandparents** of the children. Mrs. Arthur Robinson is their **grandmother;** her **husband** is their **grandfather.**

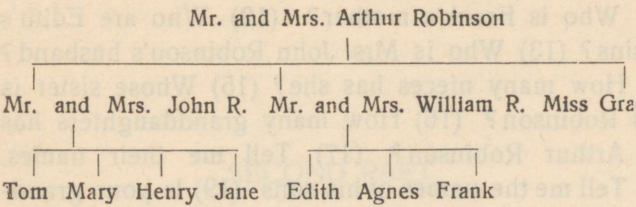
Tom and Mary, Frank and Agnes, are their **grandchildren;** so are all the other children. How many **grandsons** have they? Who are their **granddaughters?** Are there nine grandchildren?

Now we have all Tom's **relations.**

---

[1] *for* Mister.

[2] *for* Mistress *(pronounce* misiz).




I. Grandfather, grandmother.
II. Father, mother; uncle, aunt.
III. Brother, sister; cousin.
IV. Son, daughter; nephew, niece.
V. Grandson, granddaughter.

---

This boy: these boys.
Whose brother is Frank? He is Edith's brother.
He is the brother of Edith.

You are young; so is Henry.
I have a cousin; so have you.
The sun gives light; so does the moon.

---

9. A. *Pronounce:* nine, shine, five, give; Mr., Mrs.; daughter, aunt; whose, goes, does; young, cousin, some, shut; niece, nephew.

9. B. (1) Who is Jane's grandfather? (2) Who are Miss Robinson's nephews? (3) How many aunts has Henry? (4) Have you two grandmothers? (5) Are they quite young? (6) How many daughters has Mr. William Robinson? (7) Who are Mary's cousins? (8) Have you many cousins? (9) Does Jane love her grandparents? (10) Does Frank live in his uncle's house?

(11) Who is Frank's mother? (12) Who are Edith's cousins? (13) Who is Mrs. John Robinson's husband? (14) How many nieces has she? (15) Whose sister is Miss Robinson? (16) How many granddaughters has Mr. Arthur Robinson? (17) Tell me their names. (18) Tell me the names of his sons. (19) Is your grandfather very old? (20) Who is quite small? (21) Whose family is in the picture? (22) Who is an old man? (23) Are you young or old? (24) Is 9 more or less than 7? (25) What is 3 plus 5?

9. C. Tom is the son of Mr. John Robinson, the — of Mr. W. Robinson, the — of Mr. A. Robinson, the — of Edith Robinson. His sister is — of Mr. John Robinson, etc.

9. D. The sun gives light; so does the moon.

(1) Tom has a brother; so —. (2) Henry plays in the afternoon; so —. (3) Jane is a girl; so —. (4) A dog has legs; so —. (5) Mary loves her mother; so —. (6) I am learning English; so —.

9. E. *Example* — She plays: she does not play.

(1) I am called William. (2) He is working in the garden. (3) The sun is shining. (4) We love them. (5) They are quite small. (6) She lives there.

9. F. *Tell me what relations you have.*

## SECOND PART.

### 10. (X) Ten; tenth lesson.

Henry's dog Jack has four legs. Henry has two; but he also has two arms. Jack has no arms.

Henry has two **hands**; and on **each** hand are five **fingers.** How many has he on **both** hands?

We often **use** our hands; they are very **useful.** We use them **when** we **write.** What do we also use for writing? We use a **pen** and **ink,** or we write with a **(lead) pencil.** We **hold** the pen with our fingers.

When there is ink on our fingers, they are **dirty,** and we **wash** them. We use **water** and **soap** for washing our hands. Then they are not dirty, but **clean.**

We write in our **copy-books.** We **read books.** We hold them in our hands, or they lie on the **desk.** Are there many desks in this room? More than ten?

We are not lying now, we are **sitting.** On what do you sit? We sit on a **bench**; and so does Tom, when he is at school. Does our food lie on a desk? No, it is on a **table,** and we sit on **chairs,** when we eat our food. This table has four legs; so have **those** chairs.

that bench; those benches *(cp.* houses)
to sit: sitting; to write: writing
We use our legs for walking,
our fingers for holding the pen.
When do we wash our hands?
When they are dirty.

*verb* *adjective*
use useful
clean: *opposite* dirty

10. A. *Pronounce:* eat, each, clean, read; learn, Thursday; lead; see, three, week, niece; you, use, useful; who, write; chair, there; goes, those.

10. B. (1) What do we read? (2) Where do these often lie? (3) What do we hold them with? (4) What do we do, when our hands are dirty? (5) Who washes Jack? (6) Is there a table in this room? (7) What are you sitting on now? (8) What do you sit on when you are eating? (9) How many legs has a chair? (10) Are not your hands lying on the desk? (11) What do you use for writing? (12) Is there some ink on the desk? (13) How many fingers have you on both hands? (14) Are Tom's fingers very often dirty? (15) Whose hands are quite clean? (16) How many times three is nine? (17) With which part of your hand do you hold the pen? (18) With whom do you often play?

10. C. *Draw* a hand, a chair, a table, a bench.

10. D. *Give the opposites:* (1) dirty, (2) young, (3) big, (4) old, (5) clean, (6) more, (7) open, (8) question, (9) small, (10) shut, (11) less, (12) answer.

10. E. *Example* — walk: he is walking.

(1) sit, (2) lie, (3) come, (4) go, (5) live, (6) wash.

10. F. Ten is one and nine, two and —, three —, etc.

10. G. *Example* — 4: four, the fourth.

2, 6, 9, 5, 8, 1, 3.

## 11. (XI) Eleven; eleventh lesson.

We eat three times a day; we have three **meals.** The first meal is in the morning; that is our **breakfast.** In the **middle** of the day we have our **dinner,** we **dine.** In the **evening** we eat our **supper.** Do we eat our meals in this room? No, this is a **schoolroom.** We have our meals in a **dining-room.**

Who **cooks** the meals for us? The **cook** does that in the **kitchen.** There is a big **fire** in the kitchen.

There is a fire in the dining-room too, because the **weather** is **cold.** **Winter** is coming. The days are **short** in winter, and the nights are **long.** The first **season** of the **year** is **spring;** and the **next** is **summer.** In summer the weather is **hot,** and we have no fire in the dining-room. But there is **always** a fire in the kitchen, because we have hot meals in summer and winter.

Are there only three seasons? No, there is one more: it is **autumn.**

| *verb* | *noun* | |
|---|---|---|
| dine | the dinner | |
| | the dining-room | |
| cook | the cook | |
| | the kitchen | |
| The day: morning | afternoon | evening |
| Meals: breakfast | dinner | supper |
| | or | |
| | lunch(eon) | dinner |

---

11. A. *Pronounce:* meal, breakfast, each, lead, learn, year, weather; cook, food, good, room, book; dine, give, live, nine; all, small, always, walk, wall.

11. B. (1) What is the first meal called? (2) When do we have supper? (3) How many seasons are there in the year? (4) Who is always in the kitchen? (5) Where is it often very hot? (6) When are the days quite short? (7) Whose arms are long? (8) With whom do you sit at table? (9) Why is there always a fire in the kitchen? (10) Do you have dinner in the schoolroom? (11) Are your fingers long or short? Tell me (12) the parts of the day; (13) the seasons of the year; (14) the days of the week. (15) Who is in the next room? (16) Is the fire in the corner of our room?

11. C. *Example — Plural:* The days are long. *Singular:* The day is long.

(1) They go to these gardens. (2) They wash their hands. (3) We use these pens for writing.

(4) Those children are learning English. (5) We are playing with those boys. (6) They do not dine **here**. (7) These daughters cook for their fathers.

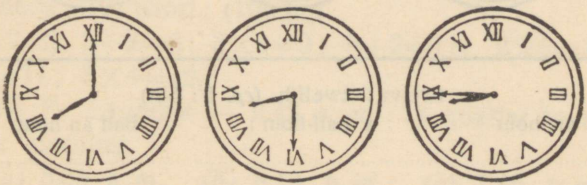
11. D. *Give the opposites of:* (1) long, (2) hot, (3) lie, (4) morning, (5) day, (6) big, (7) clean.

## 12. (XII) Twelve; twelfth lesson.

Twelve (a **dozen**) is three times four. Twice twelve are **twenty**-four (**24, XXIV**); that is also four times six. Twelve is the **half** of twenty-four; and six is a **quarter** of it.

The day has twice twelve **hours**.

The first hour of all is in the middle of the night. The sun does not shine through our windows then; but the moon **sometimes** gives light, when it is not behind the **clouds**. At that hour we are **sleeping** in **bed**.

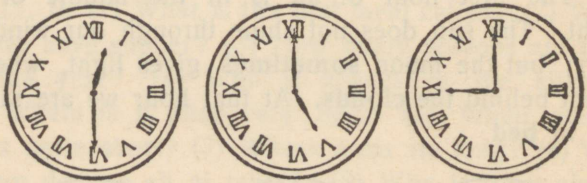


We **wake up** in the morning at seven **o'clock** (at 7 **a. m.**[1]). The **clock** tells us the **time**. We have breakfast at eight, and we sit at the table for half an

[1] a. m. = ante meridiem (Latin for "before noon").

hour, **from** eight **till** half-past eight. At a quarter to nine we go to school. At nine o'clock we are there, and then we work for three hours till **noon. After** school we go **home** and dine at half-past twelve.

In the afternoon we play in the garden, **if** we have no **work** and if the sun is shining. If we have work, we do that first. At five o'clock we **drink** a **cup** of **tea,** and eat some **bread** and **butter.** At seven (**p. m.,**[1] in the afternoon or evening) we have our supper, and not long after that we go to bed. By nine o'clock at night we are all **asleep;** but we are quite **awake** long **before** nine a. m.



twelve : twelfth (*cp.* 5 : 5th)

an hour — a half-hour : — half an hour

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| sleep | | asleep |
| wake up | | awake |
| work | work | |

sometimes : often : always

[1] p. m. = post meridiem (Latin for "after noon").

12. A. *Pronounce:* does, dozen, cousin; all, walk, quarter, daughter; noon, good, room, cook; third, girl, work, learn; eat, bread, each, lead, clean, weather.

12. B. What is (1) a half of twelve? (2) a quarter of eight? How many hours are there (3) in a day? (4) in half a day? (5) When do you eat your breakfast? (6) What do you drink at five o'clock? (7) When do you go to bed? (8) How long do you sleep? (9) Does the sun shine when you are asleep? (10) Do you sometimes work in the afternoon? (11) Who always plays then? (12) Do you often eat butter with your bread? (13) What do you do from ten till eleven? (14) What tells you the time? (15) Is there a big clock in this room? (16) Where is it?

12. C. *Draw* a clock, a cup, a cloud, a bed.

12. D. *Opposites:* (1) awake; (2) long; (3) young; (4) clean; (5) to work; (6) answer; (7) cold; (8) asleep; (9) short; (10) hot.

12. E. $5+3=8$; $3\times3=9$; $9+2=11$; $2\times6=12$; $7+4=11$; $3\times4=12$.

12. F. *Example* — 9.45 a. m.: a quarter to ten in the morning.

*(a)* 3.30 a.m.; *(b)* 8.15 p.m.; *(c)* 7.45 p.m.; *(d)* 1.45 a.m.; *(e)* 11.15 p.m.; *(f)* 5.45 a.m.

## 13. (XIII).

**Thirteen is a number**; the next number is **fourteen (14, XIV).** Then come **fifteen (15, XV), sixteen**

**(16, XVI), seventeen (17, XVII), eighteen (18, XVIII),** and **nineteen (19, XIX).**

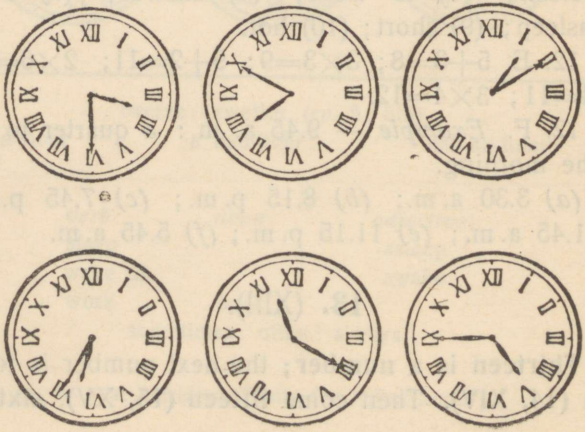
Twice ten are twenty; **add** ten to twenty and you have **thirty (30, XXX);** ten more, and you have **forty (40, XL).** Five tens are **fifty (50, L);** three times twenty are **sixty (60, LX);** twice thirty-five are **seventy (70, LXX);** add ten, and you have **eighty (80, LXXX);** then comes **ninety (90, XC);** and twice fifty are a **hundred (100, C).**

**Count** from 10 to 25. 10, 25 are **figures.**

There are sixty **minutes** in an hour. How many in half an hour?

When it is thirty minutes past three, we say: it is half-past three.

Tell me the time.



Tell me the **date.**

It is the fourth, thirteenth, **twentieth,** twenty-first, twenty-eighth of the **month.**

How many months are there? There are twelve.

## The first half of the year.

The first month of the year is **January**; then the **snow** is on the **ground.** It **covers** the ground and all is **white.** In **February** we sometimes have much **rain**; it comes from the clouds. This month has only twenty-eight days, **except** in **leap-year**; then it has one more. The next month is **March**; we now see some **flowers,** and we say: "Spring is coming!" The days are less short and the sun is **warm**; it is not hot.

In **April** there is no snow. The **birds sing** in the **green** trees, and we go for long **walks. May** is a **lovely** month; it is warm now **out of doors,** and in the middle of the day it is sometimes quite hot. Then we open the doors and windows and the air comes into the rooms and they are **cool.** Sometimes it **rains,** and then the air is quite cool. In **June** the **roses** are **blooming** in the garden, and at the **end** of the month **cherries** are **ripe.** What is the **colour** of a ripe cherry? It is **red** or **black.** The cherry is the **fruit** of the **cherry-tree.**

That is the end of the first half of the year.

*Proverb:* No rose **without** a **thorn.**



*sing.*: cherry, rose
*plur.*: cherries, roses (*cp.* house, No. 3)

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| walk | walk | |
| rain | rain | |
| love | | lovely |

hot : warm : cool : cold.

13. A. *Pronounce:* children, hundred ; figure, minute, breakfast ; son, month, love, cover, colour, mother, lovely ; six, except ; house, snow, flower, window ; warm, quarter, walk, small ; food, fruit, June.

13. B. How many days are there (1) in January? (2) in June? (3) Which is the fourth month? (4) Is it very cold then? (5) Are the days quite short? (6) Does it always rain in February? (7) How many days has this month in leap-year? (8) When is the ground white? (9) In which month do the roses bloom? (10) What is the colour of ripe cherries? (11) What is their colour when they are not ripe? (12) Of what tree are they the fruit? (13) Do you sometimes eat cherries? (14) When do you go for long walks?

(15) Why do we open the doors when it is warm? (16) How many minutes are there in a quarter of an hour? (17) When do you play out of doors?

13. C. *Draw* a bird, a cherry, a rose.

13. D. It is 11 a. m. What is the time (1) in a quarter of an hour? (2) in 40 minutes? (3) in an hour and a half? (4) in 100 minutes? (5) in two hours and three quarters? (6) in twelve hours?

13. E. It is the 22-nd of January. What is the date (1) in a week? (2) in 9 days? (3) in a month? (4) in a quarter of a year?

13. F. *Add* 12 *to (a)* 15, *(b)* 27, *(c)* 39, *(d)* 45, *(e)* 82, *(f)* 67.

13. G. $3\times7=21$, $6\times9=54$, $7\times7=49$, $8\times11=88$, $4\times15=60$, $5\times13=65$.



## 14. The second half of the year.

The first month of the summer is **July.** The **heat** is very **great** in this month. The **corn** is **no longer** green; it is **yellow** now. In the next month, in

**August,** it **becomes** quite ripe. In **September** there is less heat than in August; but it is **still** warm. Many fruits **ripen** now: the **apple** on the **apple-tree,** the **pear** on the **pear-tree** and the **plum** on the **plum-tree.** In the spring-time **blossoms** cover these trees; then they are lovely.

The weather becomes colder in **October,** and in the morning there is often a **mist** or a **fog.** In **November** and **December** it is still colder, and snow sometimes **falls** on the ground **before** the year comes to an end. Then we **throw snowballs.** If the weather is not cold, the snow **melts soon** after falling, it becomes water. But if it is very cold and the snow does not melt, then we say: "It is **freezing!**"

When the water freezes, it becomes **ice.** When the ice is quite **thick,** we walk or **skate** on it with our **friends.** If you walk or skate on **thin** ice, you fall into the water and become **wet** and cold. When the ice melts, it becomes thinner and thinner.

When is **Christmas** Day? It is on the 25-th of December.

When is **New Year's** Day? It is on the 1-st of January.

When is your **birthday,** Tom? It is on the 15-th of July.

How old are you? I am eight (years old).

to freeze: it freezes, it is freezing

| *positive* | *comparative* |
|---|---|
| old | older |
| (but: an **elder** brother) | |
| cold | colder |
| long | longer |
| young | younger |
| thin | thinner |
| wet | wetter |

The blossoms come before the fruit
*(preposition)*
The fruit ripens before winter comes.
*(conjunction)*

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| | heat | hot |
| ripen | | ripe |

14. A. *Pronounce:* June, July, August; heat, lead, great, each, learn, pear, weather; finger, longer, younger; blossom, friend, often, Christmas, biscuit; fall, call, always, also; snow, go, throw; soon, cook, room, good, book, food; freeze, sees, trees.

14. B. (1) Is the weather colder in summer or in winter? (2) When are the days longer? (3) What often falls from the clouds in January? (4) What does it cover? (5) What fruits ripen in the autumn? (6) When is it still warm? (7) When is it no longer warm? (8) Is Mr. Arthur R. still young? No, he is no longer young; he is quite old. (9) Is Jane no longer

young? Yes, she is still young; she is quite a child. (10) When do you become wet? (11) When does the weather become cold? Have you (12) an elder brother? (13) a younger sister? (14) When are there many blossoms on the cherry-tree? (15) When is it lovely in the garden? (16) When do we eat ripe pears? (17) What is the colour of the corn before it is ripe? (18) What does the ice become when it melts? (19) What does the water become when it freezes? (20) When do you go for long walks with your friends?

14. C. *Draw* a pear, a ball.

14. D. *Example* — old: This boy is older than that boy.

(1) cold, (2) thin, (3) long, (4) thick, (5) young.

(14). E. (1) *Tell me the names of some trees.*
(2) *What relations have you?*
(3) *What do you see in the schoolroom?*

## 15. Trees and flowers.

How are the **leaves** in spring? In spring they are green, but in autumn the leaves of many trees **change** colour; they become red and **brown.** Then the **woods** are very **beautiful**; but only for a short time. Soon the **strong wind** comes, and **blows upon** the leaves. Then one leaf after **another** falls from the **branches** to the ground. We no longer see the ground, because there are so many leaves. These leaves are **dead.**

Other trees, **however,** are green all through the year; they are **evergreen.** They have the **same** colour always, except when the snow covers them. What is their colour then?

Flowers have many colours; some **grow** in the garden and **make** it beautiful, others are in the woods and in the **meadows, among** the grass. What is more beautiful than a rose? Sometimes when the weather grows hotter and hotter, and there is no rain, flowers become **weak** and **die.**

We give water to the flowers in our garden; we **water** them in the evening, when the sun does not shine. Then they live a long time and they make us **happy,** when we see their beautiful colours. We are still happier, however, when we give them to a friend. Friends and flowers and books give us great **happiness.**

---

*sing.:* leaf branch
*plur.:* leaves branches *(cp.* bench, No. 10)

Some flowers are more beautiful than { other flowers / others.

to change: changing.

| *positive* | *comparative* |
|---|---|
| hot | hotter *(cp.* thin, No. 14) |
| strong | stronger |
| happy | happier |
| beautiful | more beautiful |
| useful | more useful |

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| die | | dead |
| water | water | |
| | **beauty** | beautiful |
| | happiness | happy |

---

15. A. *Pronounce:* finger, change, stronger; brown, grow, how, throw, however, snow; branches, roses, benches, houses; cover, another, colour, brother, some; dead, weather, great, eat, meadow, weak; water, wall, quarter; beauty, Tuesday.

15. B. (1) When do the leaves change colour? (2) When are the trees still beautiful? (3) What makes the leaves fall? (4) What do we see in the meadows? (5) When are they quite white? (6) When does the snow melt? (7) What is their colour then? (8) What makes us happy? (9) Are all dogs (of) the same colour? (10) Do dogs live very long? (11) Do they live longer than a man? (12) Who sometimes sit on the branches of trees? (13) Why do we water our garden in the summer? (14) Is Mr. John Robinson a strong man? (15) Is his son weaker or stronger than he? (16) Is he happy when he sees his garden? (17) What makes him still happier? (18) When does the ice grow thinner? (19) What sometimes falls upon the ground? (20) What do you do before you go to school in the morning?

15. C. *Draw* the branch of a tree, with leaves.

15. D. *What is the colour* (1) of a ripe cherry? (2) of a dead leaf? (3) of Henry's dog? (4) of the mea-

dows in spring? (5) of the corn in August? (6) of the snow?

15. E. *Tell me the parts* (1) of a tree; (2) of a year; (3) of an hour; (4) of a house.

15. F. *Example* — cold, colder.

(1) strong, —; (2) old, —; (3) short, —; (4) young, —; (5) thin, —; (6) great, —; (7) happy, —; (8) beautiful, —; (9) dirty, —; (10) hot, —; (11) useful, —; (12) lovely, —.

15. G. *Example* — This dog is young: These dogs are young.

(1) This cherry is ripe. (2) My brother is good to me, and I love him. (3) An apple is falling from the branch of that tree. (4) She gives her a beautiful flower. (5) There is a boy in the garden. (6) What is the colour of that leaf? (7) A rose is on the table. (8) That cherry is quite black.

## 16. Useful things.

Trees are useful. We eat their fruit, and we use their **wood** for making many **things:** for tables and chairs, for desks and benches **and so on** (**etc.**[1]). All these are made of wood.

This **blackboard is a wooden board,** which is **painted** black. I do not write on it with a pen or a

[1] etc. = et cetera (Latin for "and other things").

lead pencil; I use these when I write on white **paper.** But this board is black, and so I use white **chalk.**

For **cleaning** this board I have a **duster,** which soon becomes **dusty** with the **dust** of the chalk. Sometimes the chalk falls on my **coat.** I do not clean my coat with the duster; if I do that, it becomes still more dusty. No, I clean it with a **brush.** When the coat is **well brushed,** it is quite clean.

The room is also cleaned with a brush, but that is not the same brush. The **maid,** who cleans the room, uses a big brush, a **broom.** Are there **any** other brushes? Yes, there are other **kinds** of brushes. I use a **toothbrush** for cleaning my **teeth.** I clean them twice a day, in the morning and in the evening. I also have a **hairbrush,** with which I brush my hair. The hair of the **head** is **fair** (or **light**), or **dark,** and sometimes quite black.

---

*sing.:* tooth *plur.:* teeth

well *is the adverb of* good

Who is working? In which room is he?

*Here* who *and* which *are interrogative pronouns.*

I see the boy who is working.

That is the room in which he is.

*Here* who *and* which *are relative pronouns.*

*infinitive:* to clean brush paint make

*past participle:* cleaned brushed painted made

*(cp.* called, No. 7)

"He" "loves" "father" *are three* **words.**

"He loves his father" *is a* **sentence.**

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| | wood | wooden |
| | dust | dusty |
| | duster | |
| clean | | clean |
| brush | brush | |

16. A. *Pronounce:* this, thing, that, thick, thin, those, tooth, teeth; coat, board; chalk, walk, all, call, room, broom; kind, behind, die, my; head, bed, lead, red; light, white, night.

16. B. (1) How do you clean your coat? (2) What do you use for cleaning your teeth? (3) How often do you brush your hair? (4) Who uses a broom? (5) What do I write on the board with? (6) What do you write on with your pen? (7) What is made of wood? (8) When is the ground often covered with snow? (9) Whose books are quite clean? (10) Tell me what things are lying on your desk. (11) Is the pencil which you use big or small? (12) Is your pen among several pencils? (13) Have you any other pens? (14) Are any books lying on your desk? (15) Whose coat is covered with chalk? (16) Where do many trees grow? (17) In which season do the leaves of many trees die? (18) Are there any trees whose leaves are always green? (19) Is there any paper lying on your desk? (20) What is a blackboard?

16. C. *Draw* a coat, a broom, a toothbrush.

16. D. *Tell me several kinds* (1) of brushes; (2) of rooms; (3) of relations.

16. E. *Make sentences with* — (1) through; (2) by; (3) upon; (4) from; (5) till; (6) among.

16. F. *Ask questions with* — (1) why? (2) when? (3) where? (4) whose? (5) which? (6) whom?

16. G. *Example* — brother, old? My brother is not old, he is young.

(1) dog, young. (2) hands, clean. (3) window, open. (4) father, older. (5) pencil, short. (6) water, cold. (7) Jane, asleep. (8) Henry, man.

16. H. It is the 19th of May. What is the date (1) in 3 days? (2) in a week? (3) in 12 days? (4) in a month? (5) in six weeks?

16. I. *Add* 11 to *(a)* 9, *(b)* 23, *(c)* 3, *(d)* 48, *(e)* 2, *(f)* 64, *(g)* 4, *(h)* 77, *(i)* 88.

## 17. The face.

The hair on the head sometimes changes colour when a man becomes old; it **was** brown or black **once** (at one time), now it is white, **like** the snow on the head of a **mountain.** He **had** thick hair once, now it is thin. The hair is on the head; the **forehead** is that part of the **face** which is **beneath** the hair. Where is your forehead? **Put** your hand on your forehead.

We see with our **eyes**; they are black, brown, **grey** or **blue**. We have a **right** eye and a **left** eye. When we are **unhappy**, the **tears** sometimes come into our eyes; we **cry**. When we are asleep, our eyes are shut. Have you good eyes? Yes, I **can** see well; but I have a friend who **cannot** see; he is quite **blind**. It makes me unhappy to see a blind man.

We eat and **speak** with our **mouth**.

Which part of the mouth do I use when I say "p"? You use both **lips**. And when I say "f"? Then you use the **lower** lip and the **upper** teeth.

When I speak, you can **hear** what I say, you hear my words. You use your **ears** for hearing. You cannot hear well, if you put your hands **against** your ears. Those who cannot hear, are **deaf**. We love to hear the **songs** of the birds.

What is in the middle of your face? The **nose**; you can **smell** with your nose.

What is beneath your eyes? The **cheeks** are beneath them. When we are well, they are red; when we are not, they are **pale**.

What is beneath your mouth? The **chin**. We cannot always see the chin and the upper lip, because they are sometimes covered with hair. This we call a **beard**; but if it is only on the upper lip, it is called a **moustache**. An old man's beard and moustache were brown or black once; they are white now.

*Proverbs:* Big words **seldom** go with good **deeds**.
Four eyes see more than two.

one : once three : three times
two : twice four : four times

you hear { that which / what } I say

| *imperfect of* to be | | to have | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *sing.* | *plur.* | *sing.* | *plur.* |
| (1) I was | we were | I had | we had |
| (2) you were | you were | you had | you had |
| (3) he was | they were | he had | they had |

to cry : he cries, he is crying to put : putting

I, you, he, / we, you, they } can, cannot

| *verb* | *noun* |
|---|---|
| sing | song |
| do | deed |

17. A. *Pronounce:* now, snow, nose, low, how; one, once, only; forehead, often, biscuit, write, mountain, moustache; teeth, beneath, mouth, ninth; right, ice, light, eye, blind; tear, learn, hear, ear, year; cries, eyes, lies; deaf, left, dead, bed, head.

17. B. (1) When are your eyes shut? (2) Whose eyes are always shut? (3) Does it make you happy to see the blossoms on a cherry-tree? (4) Who has a beard? (5) Put your finger on your right cheek. (6) Whose songs can we hear in spring? (7) When can we smell the roses? (8) When do the tears come into our eyes? (9) What is beneath the nose? (10)

How many lips have you? (11) How many teeth? (12) On which lip is the moustache? (13) Can any of you not hear well? (14) Are there many mountains in England? (15) What is often on a very great mountain? (16) What do we do with our mouth? (17) What is like snow? (18) Who is like Tom? (19) Can you see things well when there is a fog?

17. C. *Draw a big face on paper, and name the parts of the face.*

17. D. *Words of the same family. Example* — (l) sing (a) song.

(1) happy; (2) hot; (3) love; (4) dust; (5) wood; (6) die; (7) ripe; (8) sleep; (9) dine; (10) English; (11) do; (12) beauty.

17. E. *Example* — happy, happiness; lovely, —; dirty, —.

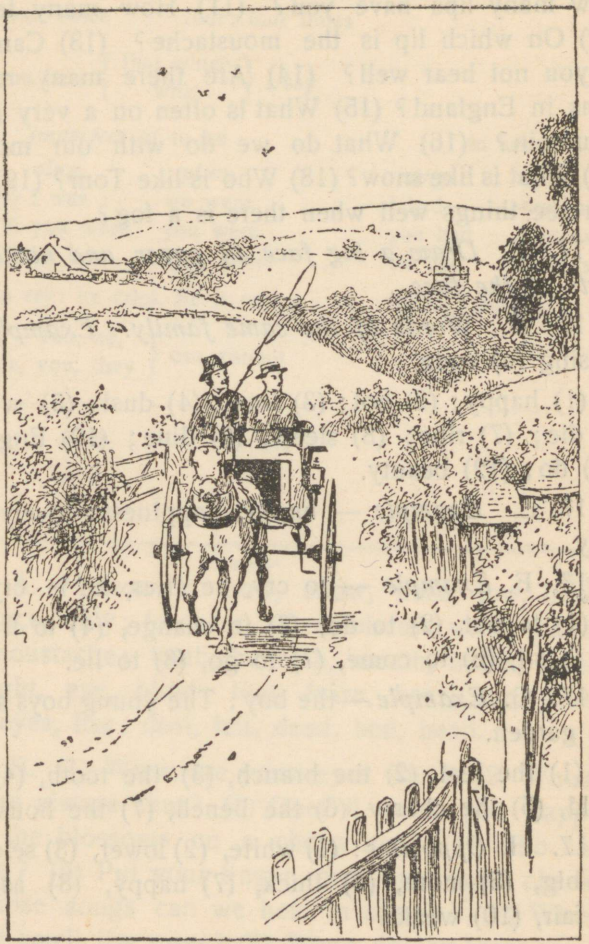
17. F. *Example* — to cry, he cries, he is crying.

(1) to put, (2) to do, (3) to change, (4) to freeze, (5) to sit, (6) to come, (7) to go, (8) to lie.

17. G. *Example* — the boy: The young boys are in the garden.

(1) the leaf, (2) the branch, (3) the tooth, (4) the child, (5) the cherry, (6) the bench, (7) the house.

17. H. *Opposites*: (1) white, (2) lower, (3) seldom, (4) big, (5) more, (6) thick, (7) happy, (8) asleep, (9) fair, (10) weak.



DRIVING TO SUNBURY

## THIRD PART.

### 18. A farmer.

A **road** goes past the garden on one **side.** There has **been** no rain for some days; **therefore** the road is covered with dust, it is quite **dry.**

There is a **carriage** on the road. Some carriages have four **wheels**; this carriage has only two. Who is sitting in it? I can see two men there, but no women. One of the men is Mr. Jenkins, a **farmer.** He has a big **farm.**

A **horse** is **drawing** the carriage. Sometimes a carriage is very **heavy,** and then two horses draw it; but this carriage is **light.** Is this horse strong? Yes, it is very strong; it is the strongest horse (that) the farmer has.

Where are Mr. Jenkins and his friend going? They are **driving** to Sunbury. They live in a **village,** which is much smaller than this **town.** They drive **along** the road for an hour. First there are **cornfields** to the right and to the left; then they **pass** through a little wood at the **foot** of a **hill,** and then they soon come to the town. They drive through the **streets,** with many houses on both sides. They



TARTU ÜLIKOOLI
RAAMATUKOGU

**stay** in the town for several hours, and drive home in the evening.

This farmer has a bigger house than Mr. Robinson; he has the biggest house in the village. He also has the greatest number of horses.

He has many other **animals** on his farm. All these animals are useful. We eat the **flesh** of the **ox**; we call it **beef.** Flesh that we eat is called **meat.** The **cow** gives us **milk** and butter and **cheese.** Oxen and



cows eat the grass of the meadows. The farmer also has **sheep** and little **lambs** in his meadows. Their flesh is called **mutton** and lamb. They also give us **wool,** which is their hair. Many things are made of wool. A good **woollen** coat is very warm.

The cow is one of the **most** useful animals, and the horse one of the most beautiful.

*Proverb:* He who does not go **forward** stays behind.

---

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *sing.:* | man | woman | foot | ox | sheep |
| *plur.:* | men | women | feet | oxen | sheep |

| *positive* | *comparative* | *superlative* |
|---|---|---|
| small | smaller | smallest |
| strong | stronger | strongest |
| big | bigger | biggest |
| useful | more useful | most useful |

to be: *past participle* been

The pencil { which I have / that I have / I have } is not very big.

| *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|
| wool | woollen (*cp.* wood, No. 16) |

---

18. A. *Pronounce:* road, coat; carriage, village, mountain, breakfast, forehead; horse, word, board, work; head, heavy, leaves, learn, lead; light, daughter, night; town, throw, snow, now, cow; along, among; cries, field, niece; lamb, autumn; men, women.

18. B. (1) Why is the road covered with dust? (2) How many wheels has the carriage in our picture? (3) What is Mr. Jenkins? (4) Where is he going? (5) What animals has he? (6) What does the cow give us? (7) What do we call the meat of sheep? (8) What is beef? (9) Are the ears of a horse long? (10) Is the farmer's horse strong or weak? (11) What is wool? (12) What is made of wool? (13) When is a

good woollen coat useful? (14) What is made of wood? (15) What do oxen eat? (16) What do we call the flesh of sheep? (17) What is the street called in which you live? (18) Are there many houses in it? (19) Who is stronger than Tom? (20) Who is bigger than Jane? (21) Which flower is the most beautiful? (22) Which is the most useful animal? (23) Is the pencil (that) you have long or short? (24) Is this pencil longer?

18. C. *Draw* a carriage with two wheels.

18. D. *Opposites:* (1) light, (2) big, (3) thin, (4) happy, (5) left, (6) lower, (7) pale, (8) seldom, (9) without.

18. E. *Example* — cold: colder, coldest; useful: more useful, most useful; (1) old, (2) thin, (3) big, (4) happy, (5) dry, (6) beautiful, (7) lovely.

18. F. *Put into the plural:* (1) This man was sitting in a carriage. (2) The farmer had an ox. (3) The old woman is not working. (4) Her foot was small. (5) I see a sheep and a lamb. (6) That child is brushing a coat.

18. G. *What do we see in a village?*

## 19. In the country.

Those who live in towns are often weak. The air is less good there than in the **country.** In the hot time of the year, the air is often quite **bad** in

the towns. Then many **people** go to the country, where the air is **pure.**

**Here** they can have the **best** milk, good fruit, and **fresh eggs.** The farmer gives them the eggs which his **hens lay.** He has many hens and a **cock,** who **crows** in the morning, sometimes very **early,** at 3 or 4 o'clock. The cock crows "Cock-a-doodle-doo!" Cocks and hens are called **fowls.**



Fowls are birds. They cannot **swim;** but there are other birds which swim very well, **for instance (e. g.**[1]**) ducks** and **geese.** A duck is smaller than a goose. Many geese are white. They have white **feathers** and a yellow **beak.**

[1] e. g. = exempli gratia (Latin for „for instance").

Many birds cannot swim; but they can **fly.** They fly with their **wings.** A fowl does not fly well; a little **sparrow** flies much **better;** and a **swallow** flies better still.

The sparrow's eggs are very small; they lie in **its nest.** The nest is very often **under** the **roof** of a house. The sparrow **feeds** its young ones, which stay in the nest. This nest is made of little feathers and **pieces** of wood and **straw.**

*Proverbs:* Two heads are better than one.
It's the early bird that **catches** the **worm.**
One swallow does not make the spring.

---

*sing.:* goose *plur.:* geese *(cp.* foot, feet; tooth, teeth)

| *positive* | *comparative* | *superlative* |
|---|---|---|
| good | better | best |

he : his she : her it : its

to swim : swimming to fly : it flies

I lay my pen on the desk; it often lies there.

| *verb* | *noun* |
|---|---|
| feed | food |

---

19. A. *Pronounce:* country, cousin, young; see, eat, people, we; pure, figure; here, there; learn, hear, year, early; crow, now, how, grow, snow, fowl, house, cow; geese, sees, freeze; feather, beak, great, head, eat, weather; swallow, wall, walk, always; straw, daughter, call; worm, word, third, Thursday.

19. B. (1) Is the air better in towns or in the country? (2) When do people go to the country? (3) What animals lay eggs? (4) When does the cock crow? (5) What are fowls? (6) Which birds can swim? (7) Which fly well? (8) What is a sparrow's nest made of? (= Of what is a sparrow's nest made?) (9) Where does the sparrow often make it? (10) Has a sparrow longer wings than a swallow? (11) What do birds eat? (12) Where do their eggs lie?

19. C. *Draw* an egg, a duck, the roof of a house.

19. D. Lie *or* lay?

(1) The swallow — eggs. (2) The eggs — in the nest. (3) — the book on the table! (4) Now it is — on the table.

19. E. *Example* — go: he goes, going.

(1) drive, (2) lie, (3) fly, (4) have, (5) swim.

19. F. *Put into the singular:* (1) Those geese are old. (2) Were these men working? (3) What do cocks say? (4) There were eggs in the nests. (5) Men and women are sitting under those trees. (6) There are lovely roses in our gardens.

## 20. Bees and cats.

Here is our first picture **again.** What do we see on it? We can see part of the garden **near** Mr. Robinson's house.

"Are there any flowers in your garden, Mary?"

"Yes, there are many flowers, and some **bushes** and trees."

"Do you often play there?"

"Yes, we do; each of us has a little garden in the big garden, and we do all kinds of work; for instance, we water our flowers and we **take away** the dead leaves."

There are many **bees** in Mr. Robinson's garden. These useful little **insects** live in **hives** made of straw or wood. They fly **about** in the garden and in the fields, going from flower to flower. In the hives they make **honey**, which is very **sweet.**

"Tom, do you sometimes have honey for breakfast?"

"Yes, I do; and sometimes I have **jam.**"

Jam is made of fruit cooked with **sugar.**

Before eating his breakfast, Henry always gives his dog Jack some biscuits and clean water. His sister Mary has a lovely white cat.

"What's your cat's name, Mary?"

"She's called Snowball."

"Do you give her water?"

"No, I give her milk **every** morning. I **pour** the milk from a **jug** into a **saucer**, and **place** the saucer on the ground. Are you **fond** of cats?"

"Yes, I am."

"So am I; but some people do not **like** cats. Snowball is very fond of me; she is often behind me when I go about the house."



SNOWBALL

"Has Snowball any **kittens**?"

"Yes, she has two; they play with her like little children. They have **such soft** coats!"

Sometimes Snowball **climbs** upon the roof, and when she comes **back** into the house, she is quite dirty. She does not like to be dirty; and so she cleans her coat with her **tongue, till** it is quite white again.

*Proverbs:* A word once **out** flies **everywhere.**
When **one** has not what one likes, one **must** like what one has.
He who says what he likes, must hear what he does not like.

---

to place: he places, placing.
I must, he must, they must, one must, etc.

He takes it away. They fly about. She goes about.
away *is an adverb* about *is an adverb*

He works from 9 till 12. I brush my coat, till it is clean
till *is a preposition* till *is a conjunction*

---

20. A. *Pronounce:* near, hear, early, year, learn; bush, jug, put, such; soft, often; where, here, there; jam, lamb, climb; son, honey, month, fond; catch, such, shine, sugar; saucer, draw, daughter, straw; pour, our, your; tongue, young.

20. B. (1) What do the children do in the garden? (2) Who waters the flowers? (3) What are bees?

(4) How are they useful? (5) What are hives made of? (6) What do you have for breakfast? (7) What does Henry give his dog? (8) Who is Snowball? (9) Is she a black cat? (10) When does Mary give her cat milk? (11) Where does she put it? (12) What are kittens? (13) Who can climb well? (14) How does a cat clean her coat? (15) Do you like cats very much? (16) Do you like dogs better than cats? (17) Who is fond of Jack? (18) Who makes jam? (19) What is it made of? (20) What is sweet?

20. C. *Draw* a bush, a bee, a jug, a cup and saucer.

20. D. *Put into the plural:*

(1) This bush is in my garden. (2) That child had a cat and a dog. (3) The man is working in his house. (4) That leaf is dead.

20. E. *Say:*

*(a)* 60 + 18 =, *(b)* 129 — (less or **minus**) 42 =, *(c)* 275 — 191 =, *(d)* 459 — 281 =, *(e)* 607 — 48 =.

20. F. *Example* — 7 : iv = the seventh of April.

*(a)* 12 : ii, *(b)* 2 : vii, *(c)* 19 : v, *(d)* 28 : xi, *(e)* 31 : iii, *(f)* 23 : x.

20. G. *Give the names of some colours.*

20. H. *What proverbs do you know?*

20. I. "to" is a *preposition. What* is (1) the, (2) man, (3) old, (4) away, (5) a, (6) who, (7) till, (8) wood, (9) happily, (10) give?

## 21. Snowball, some mice and a rat.

*Mary.* "**Yesterday** Snowball had an **exciting** time!"

*Jane.* "Tell me all **about** it, Mary!"

*Mary.* "She came to the door of my **bedroom** quite early in the morning and said: Miow!"

*Jane.* "Why did she come so early? What had she done?"

*Mary.* "Snowball is fond of going about in the house **during** the night, and sometimes she catches a **mouse.** Mice come out of their **holes** at night and say: 'There is **no one** here! and **oh,** what beautiful cheese!' They soon go on to the cheese, but they do not stay there long. **Pussy** has seen them, and she comes quite softly and in another **moment** a little mouse is dead. The others don't eat any more cheese; they **run** back to their holes."

*Jane.* "Did Snowball catch any mice?"

*Mary.* "Yes, she brought me some yesterday morning."

*Jane.* "How many did she **bring** you?"

*Mary.* "She brought no less than three mice and laid them on the **mat** at my door. That is what I saw when I opened it."

Has your cat **ever** caught as many as that?

"Have you ever seen a **rat,** Henry?"

*Henry.* "Yes, once there was a rat in the house — a great, big rat. Snowball is not fond of rats; she is **afraid** of them, because they are strong

and **bite** with their **sharp** teeth. They can bite through a wooden board."

*Jane.* "Who caught that big rat?"

*Henry.* "It was Jack, who is much stronger than Snowball. When the rat saw him, she ran **quickly** to her hole. But Jack was quicker still, and caught her in a moment. It was the biggest rat (that) I had ever seen."

*Proverbs:* He who is afraid of doing **too**[1] much always does too little.

No one is too old to learn.

---

*sing.:* mouse
*plur.:* mice

(well *in No.* 16 *is the adverb of* good)

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *adjective:* | soft | quick | beautiful | happy |
| *adverb:* | softly | quickly | beautifully | happily |

We walked about.
*Here* about *is an adverb.*

He is telling us about the animals.
*Here* about *is a preposition.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *infin.:* | open | lay | say | bring | catch |
| *impft.;* | opened | laid | said | brought | caught |
| *past p.:* | opened | laid | said | brought | caught |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *infin.:* | do | see | run | come |
| *impft.:* | did | saw | ran | came |
| *past p.:* | done | seen | run | come |

[1] Tom is young and Mary is young too; but they are not too young to work.

I have opened *is the perfect of* to open.
I had done *is the pluperfect of* to do.

---

21. A. *Pronounce:* yesterday, forehead, breakfast; excite, except; your, during, Thursday, figure, pure; put, but, Pussy, bush, run; daughter, brought, caught; light, night, bite, white, right; quite, quick, quarter.

21. B. (1) Who had an exciting time? (2) When did Snowball come to Mary's door? (3) What had she done? (4) What does Snowball often do at night? (5) What animals do not like her? (6) When do they come out of their holes? (7) What are they fond of eating? (8) What did Mary see when she opened her door? (9) Did Snowball catch the rat? (10) Why not? (11) Did the rat run more quickly than Jack? (12) Was it a little rat? (13) Do you like rats? (14) Have you ever seen a white rat? (15) Who is too old to learn?

21. C. *For the present* (e. g. open) *put the imperfect* (e. g. opened) *and the perfect* (e. g. has opened).

(1) The cat catches a mouse. (2) She brings it to Mary. (3) Do you see my book? (4) This dog runs quickly. (5) He does his work well. (6) He often lays his pen on the table. (7) He often comes to me. (8) He says: Good morning.

21. D. *Adverbs to* — (1) quick, (2) good, (3) sharp, (4) soft, (5) fond, (6) sweet, (7) heavy, (8) useful.

21. E. *Nouns to* — (1) to sing, (2) happy, (3) woollen, (4) to do, (5) hot, (6) to feed.

## 22. Tom and his cousin Frank.

*Tom.* Good morning, Frank, how are you?

*Frank.* I'm quite well, **thank you.**

*Tom.* Have you ever been to Woodlands[1]?

*Frank.* No, I've **never** been there.

*Tom.* Well, we went there yesterday, and I tell you it is lovely there. We left **home** very early.

*Frank.* Why did you **leave** so early?

*Tom.* Because it is such a long **way**[2]. It was seven o'clock when Father, Henry and I left the house.

*Frank.* Didn't your sisters go too?

*Tom.* No, **you see**, Mother is not very well, and so they stayed at home with her. And then, it was a very long walk.

*Frank.* How long were you walking?

*Tom.* We did not **get** to Woodlands till **nearly** one o'clock; so we took **over** five hours to get there. It was a very **fine** day, and the sun was shining all the time; but during the **last** two hours we were in a thick wood, and there it was quite cool. Father told us all about the animals in the wood: about **foxes** and **rabbits** and **bears.**

*Frank.* Uncle has told me some **stories**; I like hearing them very much.

*Tom.* Has he ever told you a story about Mr. Rabbit and Mr. Fox?

---

[1] I have been to W. = I have gone there and come back.

[2] = because the way is so long.

*Frank.* No, I don't **know** that story.

*Tom.* Ask him to tell you, it is such a good story. — Well, Father has a friend at Woodlands, and we went to his house: he was very **glad** to see us. He saw that we were **hungry** and **thirsty**; so he gave us **plenty** to eat and drink, and then we **looked** at the things in his garden.

*Frank.* What was there to see there?

*Tom.* Oh, **ever so** many things! The garden is **full** of lovely flowers; and there are bee-hives; and there is a big **pond.** The water in the pond is quite **clear** and you can see the **fishes** swimming about. I've seldom seen so many in a pond. Henry was sitting on the branch of a tree looking at some of the fishes, and he fell from the branch into the water. It was a good thing that the water wasn't **deep** or dirty. The hot sun soon made him dry again.

*Frank.* When did you get home?

*Tom.* Father's friend has a carriage, and his man drove us home in that. We left at half-past four, and we were home by seven. It was a beautiful day, and I'm fond of walking. But the best thing of all was to hear Father's stories about the animals.

*Frank.* *Do* tell me one of those which he told you yesterday.

*Tom.* **All right!**

*Proverbs:* There is no **place** like home.
**Hunger** is the best **sauce.**
A tree is known by its fruit.
Fine feathers make fine birds.

---

*sing.:* fox fish story
*plur.:* foxes fish(es) stories (*cp.* cherry, No. 13)

I'm = I am I don't = I do not
I've = I have I didn't = I did not

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| leave | make | tell | drive | give |
| left | made | told | drove | gave |
| left | made | told | driven | given |
| take | fall | know | drink | go |
| took | fell | knew | drank | went |
| taken | fallen | known | drunk | gone |

Do tell me! *is a strong imperative.*

---

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| | hunger | hungry |
| | **thirst** | thirsty |
| place | place | |

never: sometimes: often: always

---

22. A. *Pronounce:* thank, this, thing, those, thin, thirsty; home, some, early, nearly, clear, bear, learn; six, fox, eggs; snow, go, know, throw; finger, hunger, longer, younger; book, look, looked; ice, sauce, sentence; done, one, known, gone; first, thirst.

22. B. (1) Where had Tom been? (2) Was it near his home? (3) To whom did he tell about it? (4) Did he

like his walk? (5) About what did Mr. Robinson tell stories? (6) Who lived at Woodlands? (7) What did he give the boys? (8) What did they do when they were no longer hungry? (9) How did Henry get wet? (10) What made him dry again? (11) Did they walk home? (12) How long did they take to get home?

22. C. *Draw* a rabbit, a fish, a bear's head.

22. D. *For the imperfect* (*e. g.* painted) *put the present* (*e. g.* paints *or* is painting) *and the pluperfect* (*e. g.* had painted).

(1) She took her books to school. (2) Their father told them a story. (3) We went to the pond. (4) You left at seven o'clock. (5) I knew him well. (6) He drank some water. (7) He fell into the pond.

22. E. *Adjectives to* (1) hunger, (2) heat, (3) to love, (4) happiness, (5) thirst, (6) he, she, (7) wood, (8) dust, (9) wool, (10) to use, (11) England, (12) beauty.

22. F. *Give the names of all the four-footed animals you know.*

## 23. Mr. Rabbit and Mr. Fox.

*Tom.* Mr. Rabbit was walking along one day with his fine **bushy tail** and —

*Frank.* But, Tom, rabbits' tails are quite short!

*Tom.* Am *I* telling the story or are *you*?

*Frank.* **Please** go on, Tom. This rabbit had a fine tail.



MR. FOX AND MR. RABBIT

*Tom.* Yes, he had, — a fine bushy tail; and **as** he was going along, he saw Mr. Fox.

*Frank.* And he ran away very quickly, didn't he?

*Tom.* No, they were friends. Mr. Fox was **carrying** a big **bag** of fish. Mr. Rabbit said:

**"How do you do,** Mr. Fox? What a **lot** of fish! Where did you catch them?"

"Happy to see you, Mr. Rabbit! Yes, they are fine fish. I caught them in the pond near the wood."

"I **suppose** you were **fishing** for several hours and some friends were with you."

**"Oh dear** no, I was quite **alone;** it's very **easy** to catch them."

"How did you do it?" asked Mr. Rabbit, **for** he was very fond of fish.

"Well, I saw a tree which had fallen into the water, and I sat on it, with my tail in the water. The pond's full of fish; one after another came and bit the hair of my tail. I drew it out each time, and that's how I caught them." And then Mr. Fox said **good-bye.**

That same evening Mr. Rabbit went to the pond, and he soon saw the fallen tree. He sat upon it, with his fine bushy tail in the water. Before long he fell asleep. Now it was a very cold night **indeed.** It froze and froze; the **whole** pond was covered with ice. In the middle of the night Mr. Rabbit woke up.

He said: "There's **something** on my tail!" and he **pulled.** "It's a very big fish, I'm **sure!**" and he pulled again.

"It's a very strong fish, too!" and he gave another **pull,** a great big pull. Jerk! Crash! **Poor** Mr. Rabbit!

*Frank.* Did he pull his tail out of the ice?

*Tom.* No, that's **just** what he didn't do. And that's why rabbits have such little tails.

*Proverbs:* It's easy to swim when another holds up your head.

It's a poor mouse that has only one hole.

---

a rabbit's tail = the tail of a rabbit
rabbits' tails = the tails of rabbits
a man's dog = the dog of a man
men's dogs = the dogs of men

it's = it is
(') *is the apostrophe*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| carry | bite | freeze | draw | sit |
| carried | bit | froze | drew | sat |
| carried | bitten | frozen | drawn | sat |

This is for you.
*Here* for *is a preposition.*

I like winter, for I am fond of skating.
*Here* for *is a conjunction.*

They were walking along. *Here* along *is not a preposition, as in No. 18; it is an adverb.*

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| | bush | bushy |
| fish | fish | |
| pull | pull. | |

23. A. *Pronounce:* please, freeze, sees, easy, rose, houses, horses; as, this, has, us, is, was; bag, back; one, gone, alone, done; saw, sauce; here, hair, there, dear; who, whole, whose, write, answer; sure, sugar, relation, shine; poor, door, pour.

23. B. (1) Who is telling Frank a story? (2) What is the story about? (3) What kind of a tail had Mr. Rabbit? (4) Are all rabbits' tails like that? (5) Whom did Mr. Rabbit see? (6) Was he afraid of Mr. Fox? (7) What was he carrying? (8) Where had he caught them? (9) Were some of his friends fishing too? (10) Did he take long to catch them? (11) How did he do it? (12) Did Mr. Fox stay with Mr. Rabbit? (13) What did he say when he left him? (14) What kind of a night was it, when Mr. Rabbit went to the pond? (15) Did anyone go with him? (16) Was there any ice on the pond? (17) When did he awake? (18) Why did he pull? (19) How many pulls did he give? (20) Did he pull his tail out?

23. C. *Draw* Mr. Rabbit sitting on the fallen tree.

23. D. *For the perfect put the present and the imperfect.*

(1) He has fallen into the pond. (2) The dog has bitten his finger. (3) The fox has drawn his tail out of the water. (4) They have given me some fish. (5) This water has frozen.

23. E. *Say—(a)* 568+113=, *(b)* 329—151=, *(c)* 197+671=, *(d)* 930—787=.

23. F. *Example.* 1.15 a. m.: a quarter past one in the night.

*(a)* 7.30 p.m., *(b)* 11.45 a.m., *(c)* 8.25 a.m., *(d)* 3.30 p.m., *(e)* 10.30 p.m.

## 24. A day in June.

It was a hot day in June. Mary and Jane had come to **spend** the afternoon with their cousins. It was Edith's birthday; Mary and Jane had **wished** her many happy **returns** of the day, and had looked at her **presents.**

Then the girls and little Frank had played in a meadow near the house. The long grass had just been **cut,** and there were several big **heaps** of **hay.** After a good **game,** they all came **indoors** and had tea.

Now they were sitting in the garden, under the great **boughs** of a fine old **maple.** It was beautifully cool there.

"What **shall** we do?" asked Agnes.

"I **will** read you a story, if you like," said Edith.

"Oh yes, please do!" **exclaimed** all the others.

"But what shall it be?" Edith asked them.

Agnes said: "There are many stories in the book that Aunt Grace gave you — won't you read us one of them? I am sure we shall like it, because Auntie always gives us such **interesting** books. I'll **fetch** it for you!"

She ran indoors, and soon came back with the book.

Edith looked at the **page** of **"Contents"**. She exclaimed: "Here is a story about the rats and their little daughter! Have you ever heard a story about rats, Mary?"

"No, *do* read it! But I'm glad Snowball is not here; she is so afraid of rats, **you know!**"

So when they had all made **themselves** quite **comfortable,** Edith read them the **tale** about the rats and their little daughter.

*Proverbs:* Make hay **while** the sun shines.
Self-done is soon done.
**To-day** is better than two **to-morrows.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| myself | yourself | himself | herself | itself |
| ourselves | yourselves | themselves | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| hear | read | spend | cut |
| heard | read | spent | cut |
| heard | read | spent | cut |

*the future*

| *sing.* | *plur.* |
|---|---|
| (1) I shall go | we shall go |
| (2) you will go | you will go |
| (3) he will go | they will go |

I will do it = I shall do it gladly

I'll = I will — I won't [wount] = I will not

yesterday was Sunday.

to-day is Monday.

to-morrow will be Tuesday.

---

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| tell | tale | |
| **return** | return | |
| **contain** | contents *(pl.)* | |
| **comfort** | **comfort** | comfortable |
| wish | **wish** | |

---

24. A. *Pronounce:* wished, loved, liked, worked, painted; meadow, heap, weather, year, heard, clear, early; now, bough, house, town; except, exclaim; interesting, evening, every, several; page, change, hunger, thing; no, know; nose, knows.

24. B. (1) When were Mary and Jane with their cousins? (2) Whose birthday was it? (3) What do you say to anyone whose birthday it is? (4) Where did the children play? (5) What is hay? (6) Where did they all have tea? (7) Where did they sit after tea? (8) Was it hot there? (9) What did Edith do? (10) Who had given her a book? (11) Who fetched the book? (12) Did she walk or run? (13) Why was

Mary glad that Snowball was not there? (14) Why must we make hay while the sun shines? (15) What is soon done? (16) What do we call the day after to-day?

24. C. *Draw* a maple tree with many boughs, a maple leaf.

24. D. I wash myself, you —, he —, she —, we —, you —, they —.

24. E. I shall come, you —, etc.

24. F. *For the present put the imperfect, the pluperfect, and the future.*

(1) They often come. (2) He cuts himself badly. (3) Do you hear what she says? (4) This makes our work interesting. (5) He tells you stories.

24. G. *Adverbs to* (1) glad, (2) thirsty, (3) fine, (4) heavy, (5) full, (6) useful.

24. H. *Opposites* to (1) out of doors, (2) last, (3) clean, (4) bad, (5) little, (6) heavy, (7) wet, (8) happy, (9) upper, (10) dark.

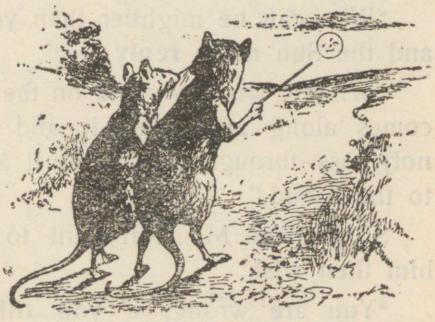
24. I. *Nouns to* (1) to contain, (2) to tell, (3) hungry, (4) to feed, (5) happy, (6) to do, (7) to sing, (8) beautiful.

## 25. The Rats and their Daughter.

Once upon a time there were two most **respectable** Rats. The Rats' home was comfortable and

they had many fine children; but the one they loved most was their youngest daughter. She was a lovely little Rat; she had the **smoothest** grey coat, and the **brightest** little eyes, and such dear little ears! If you looked at her, you were sure that you had never seen **anything** so beautiful in your **life.** At **least,** that is what her **own** parents said.

When she was old **enough** to **marry,** they became very **serious.**



"She must have no **ordinary** husband," they said. "He must be very **mighty** indeed. No one but the mightiest in the **world** shall marry our beautiful daughter."

But who was the mightiest? It was not easy to tell, and they didn't know. So they went to a very old and **wise** Rat, and asked him. His answer was:

"If you wish to give your daugther to the mightiest of all, then go to the Sun, and ask him to be your **son-in-law.** I am sure no one is mightier than the Sun."

So Mr. and Mrs. Rat went to the Sun (it's **rather** a long way), and asked him to marry their daughter. But the Sun **replied:**

"I'm much **obliged** to you for coming all this way and **offering** me your dearly **beloved** daughter for a wife; but please tell me, why did you **choose** *me?*"

"We chose you, because we wished to give her to the mightiest in the whole world; and **of course** no one can be mightier than you."

"I see," said the Sun; "but I'm afraid you are **wrong,** there's one mightier than I am, and you must give your daughter to him."

"Who can be mightier than you?" asked Mr. Rat, and the Sun made **reply:**

"When I wish to shine on the **earth,** a Cloud often comes along and covers it, and my light can't (cannot) pass through it or drive it away. You must go to the Cloud."

So Mr. and Mrs. Rat went to the Cloud and told him their wish.

"You are wrong, if you **think** that I am the mightiest," said the Cloud. "It's **true** that I can cover the earth, but I'm quite weak when the Wind blows upon me. He drives me along and **tears** me to pieces, and I can do **nothing** against him."

So Mr. and Mrs. Rat went to the Wind.

But the Wind said:

"Yes, I am mightier than the Cloud. But I am not the mightiest in the world; for the Wall is sometimes in my way, and I blow and blow, but the Wall is still there, and I cannot pass through it."

Again Mr. and Mrs. Rat went on, **until** they came to the Wall. But the Wall said:

"You are right, I can indeed hold back the Wind, I am mightier than he. But there's the Rat, who makes holes in me — and I can do nothing against him. The best thing for you to do is to choose the Rat for your son-in-law!"

Then Mr. and Mrs. Rat were happy, for they saw that the Wall spoke words of **wisdom.** They went home again, and their beautiful daughter married a **handsome** Rat; and they lived happily for many, many years. Who knows? **Perhaps** they are still **alive!**

*Proverbs:* Time brings wisdom.
That is good wisdom, which is wisdom in the end.
What's wrong to-day won't be right to-morrow.
Enough is better than too much.
Every bird thinks its own nest beautiful.
Nothing falls into the mouth of a sleeping fox.

---

alive *is not used before a noun*

| *positive* | | *comparative* | | *superlative* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| little | | less | | least |
| think | choose | speak | tear | blow |
| thought | chose | spoke | tore | blew |
| thought | chosen | spoken | torn | blown |

until = till *(conjunction)*
but *sometimes* = except

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| **respect** | **respect** | respectable |
| | **might** | mighty |
| | wisdom | wise |
| reply | reply | |
| offer | **offer** | |
| **speak** | **speech** | |
| live | life | alive |

Relations by **marriage**:

| | |
|---|---|
| father-in-law | mother-in-law |
| brother-in-law | sister-in-law |
| son-in-law | daughter-in-law |

---

25. A. *Pronounce:* respectable, interesting, comfortable, ordinary; smooth, tooth, month, mouth; bright, brought, mighty, caught, daughter, eight; own, blown, town; word, world, to-morrow; chose, froze, grows, nose, throws; write, who, whole, while, wrong; tear, earth, third, learn, work, girl, return; nothing, think, there; true, blue, grew, who, blew, too; until, pencil; wisdom, husband; give, alive, five, live, hive, drive.

25. B. (1) Had the rats only one child? (2) What do you know about their youngest daughter? (3) What did her parents say about her? (4) Did they think that an ordinary husband was good enough for her? (5) Whom did they ask, who was the mightiest? (6) To whom did they go first? (7) Did the sun become their son-in-law? (8) Why not? (9) Can the light of the sun pass through all clouds? (10) Can

you see any clouds now? (11) What does the wind do to the clouds? (12) What makes the clouds very beautiful? (13) What can the wind not pass through? (14) What made Mr. and Mrs. Rat happy? (15) Whom did their daughter marry? (16) Are they still alive?

25. C. *Nouns to* (1) wise, (2) to marry, (3) to live, (4) to speak, (5) mighty, (6) to tell, (7) comfortable, (8) hungry.

25. D. *For the imperfect put the present and the future.*

(1) They chose me. (2) She spoke clearly. (3) The cloud replied. (4) We did not hear you. (5) He came to the village. (6) He tore it to pieces. (7) He thought himself strong. (8) The wind blew.

25. E. *Conjugate in the future:*

I make myself comfortable.

25. F. *Tell me the names of all the animals you know.*

25. G. *Tell the story of Mr. and Mrs. Rat in your own words.*

---

FOURTH PART.

## 26. Leaving for Sandy Bay.

Mr. and Mrs. Arthur Robinson, the children's grandparents, live in the fishing village of Sandy Bay; their daughter Grace **keeps** house for them. They **invite** the families of their sons to stay with them every year. Once their house **could** take both families, but now it is not **large** enough for both, so the John Robinsons come one year, and the William Robinsons the next.

This year it was the **turn** of Mr. John Robinson's family. In the third week in June, not long after the **visit** Mary and Jane had **paid** to their cousins, they were all **busy packing.** Jack **jumped** about; he was quite excited. Henry said he was sure that his dog knew they were going to the **seaside.** Snowball, however, was quite **quiet;** she liked her home and never **wanted** to leave it. Mary said to her: "Snowball, I am going to leave you here; I **hope** you will be a good cat, and catch mice, and leave the little birds in the garden and on the roof alone. When I come back, I shall ask cook how you have **behaved."** Snowball **seemed** to **understand** what

Mary said; at least, she came up to her **mistress,** looking very good.

When the **trunks** had been packed, Mrs. Robinson and the children got into the carriage. Their father drove them as **far** as Sunbury. (**Probably** you **remember** the name: Mr. Jenkins drove there with his friend.) The weather was **dull** at first, but soon it became quite bright, and the sun shone beautifully.

When they **arrived** at the **railway station,** a **porter** took their trunks, while Mr. Robinson went to the **ticket office** to **buy** the **tickets.** He said to the **clerk** who **sells** them: "Sandy Bay, third return, three whole and two half tickets, and a dog ticket." (Mr. Robinson bought half tickets for Henry and Jane, because they were under twelve.)

Mr. Robinson paid for the tickets and the clerk gave them to him. They **cost** 15s. 6d. (fifteen **shillings** and **sixpence**). As Mr. Robinson had given the clerk a **sovereign,** he **received** 4s. 6d. **change.**

In England there are **pounds** (or sovereigns), shillings, and **pence.** The sovereign and **half-sovereign** are in **gold.** There are twenty shillings (20s.) in one pound (£1). The **crown** (5s.), **double florin** (4s.), **half-crown** (2s. 6d.), **florin** (2s.), shilling, sixpence and **threepence** are in **silver.** There are twelve pennies in a shilling; the **penny** (1d.), **half-penny** and **farthing** are in **bronze.**

In **America** there are **dollars** and **cents** ($1 = 100c.). There are **bills** for one dollar, five dollars, 10 dollars,

etc., and **coins** in silver for 10, 25, and 50 cents, and one dollar; the one cent coin is bronze, and the 5 cent **nickel.**

*Proverbs:* The more one has, the more one wants.
All is not gold that **glitters.**
**None** so busy as those who do nothing.

---

penny: *plural* pennies and pence

| *active* | *passive* |
|---|---|
| I pack the trunk. | It is packed. |
| I packed the trunk. | It was packed. |
| I have packed the trunk. | It has been packed. |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| pay | buy | sell | keep | cost | get | shine |
| paid | bought | sold | kept | cost | got | shone |
| paid | bought | sold | kept | cost | got | shone |

I can: I could [kud]

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| hope | **hope** | **hopeful** |
| **visit** | visit | |
| | gold | **golden** |
| change | change | |

---

26. A. *Pronounce:* could, good, wood; come, none, gone, done, shone, alone; turn, learn, Thursday, early; paid, made, laid, afraid, said; busy, put, butter, trunk, dull, sure; quite, quiet; want, water, walk, what; remember, understand, invite, arrive; buy, biscuit; cent, pence; half, half-penny.

26. B. (1) Who lives at Sandy Bay? (2) Whose turn was it to go there? (3) When did they go? (4) Why did they like going? (5) Why was Jack excited? (6) What did Mary say to Snowball? (7) Did they all walk to Sunbury? (8) Have you ever heard of Sunbury? (9) Who took the trunks? (10) What did Mr. Robinson say to the clerk? (11) Where was this clerk? (12) How much did the tickets cost? (13) How much change did Mr. Robinson receive? (14) Tell me what coins are made of gold, of silver, and of bronze? (15) How many cents are there in half a dollar? (16) How many shillings are there in a pound? (17) What is a florin?

26. C. *Draw* a trunk, a railway ticket.

26. D. *For the perfect put the present and the imperfect.*

(1) You have kept my book. (2) He has paid for his tickets. (3) We have got what we wanted. (4) It has cost me much. (5) The grass has been cut. (6) She has torn this piece of paper. (7) I have thought about it. (8) They have not spoken to me. (9) Father has bought the tickets.

26. E. *Say these dates:*

*(a)* 12: iv, *(b)* 23: vii, *(c)* 1: ii, *(d)* 25: xii, *(e)* 30: ix, *(f)* 28: iii.

26. F. *What change (in silver) could you give me for a dollar? for a sovereign?*

26. G.

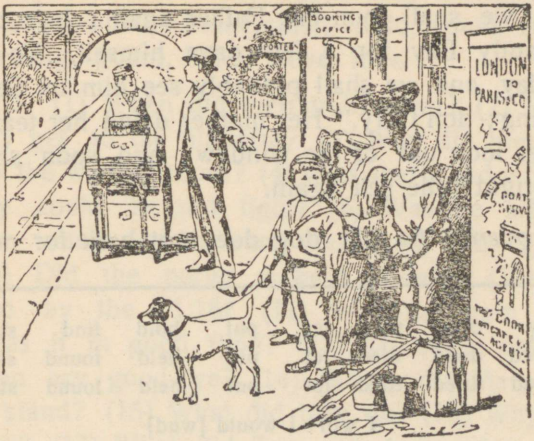
*(a)* £3 4s. 3d. + £1 18s. 10d. =
*(b)* £17 11s. 8d. — £13 6s. 9d. =
*(c)* £2 8s. 4½d. × 6 =
*(d)* $75.35 + $29.80 =
*(e)* $141.40 — $69.65 =
*(f)* $25.25 × 4 =

## 27. Away we go!

The **train** going **west** did not leave till 11.25, and it was now only a **few** minutes past eleven; so they had arrived rather early. Mrs. Robinson and the children sat on a **seat** on the **platform**. The **waiting-rooms** are always so dull: **time-tables** are not very interesting do read! Henry held Jack by a piece of **string** which he had **fastened** to his **collar**; he behaved very well indeed, until another dog came and **barked** at him. Then there was nearly a **fight**. Jack pulled at the string very **hard**; but Henry **would** not **let** him go. It was a good thing the other dog was taken away — Jack was getting very excited and barked like anything.

**Meanwhile** Mr. Robinson had seen to the **luggage**. The porter had put on each of the three trunks a **label** with SANDY BAY on it. Mr. Robinson gave him a **tip**, and told him to be sure not to make a **mistake**; the luggage was to go by the 11.25, and he must not put it into the 11.18.

When the 11.18 arrived, the children of course all got **up** and were **ready** to get in; but Mr. Robin-




son told them it was the wrong train, and they must **wait** a little longer. At last the 11.25 came in, a few minutes behind time. They soon **found** a carriage that was not very full.

As there were not many people on the train, the **guard** said Henry could take Jack in with him. Henry was **delighted**; he did not like to be **separated** from his dog. Mr. Robinson said good-bye to his wife and children, and gave them each a **kiss**; then the train **moved** out of the station.

Mary and Henry stood at the window and **waved** their **handkerchiefs,** until they could no longer see their father. Jane was crying on her mother's **lap**; she did not like leaving her father, **even** for a short

time. Tom **tried** to comfort her; he said: "Don't cry, Jane; we shall soon see Father again; he's coming to Sandy Bay for a few days himself. To-day is Tuesday, and we shall probably see him on Saturday morning; don't cry." Her mother **dried** her tears, and let her look out of the window; and soon she was her bright little self again.

*Proverb:* An old dog does not bark for nothing.

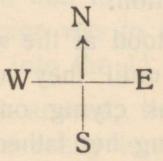
---

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| cry | dry | try | let | put | hold | find | stand |
| cried | dried | tried | let | put | held | found | stood |
| cried | dried | tried | let | put | held | found | stood |

I will: I would [wud]

---

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| sit | seat | |
| delight | **delight** | **delightful** |
| **kiss** | kiss | |
| dry | | dry |
| **fight** | fight | |
| | **south** | **southern** |
| | **north** | **northern** |
| | **east** | **eastern** |
| | **west** | **western** |



27. A. *Pronounce:* few, knew, you; eleven, even, seven; fasten, often, handkerchief; could, would, stood; right, wrong; guard, hard; move, love.

27. B. (1) When did their train leave? (2) When did they get to the platform? (3) Why did they not go into the waiting-room? (4) Who nearly had a fight? (5) Why could he not fight? (6) Was he **silent?** (7) How many trunks were there? (8) Who got a tip? (9) Did the porter make a mistake? (10) Did they go by the 11.18? (11) Was the train full? (12) Was it in good time? (13) To whom did Mr. Robinson say good-bye? (14) Where did Mary and Henry stand? (15) What did they do? (16) Why did Jane cry? (17) What did Tom say to comfort her? (18) When was their father coming? (19) When do dogs bark? (20) Has a dog ever bitten you?

27. C. *For the present put the imperfect and the pluperfect.*

(1) He lets me do it. (2) They put it on the table. (3) We find this work easy. (4) She tries hard to do her work well. (5) Henry holds Jack by a string. (6) She keeps house for them.

27. D. *Opposites:* (1) quiet, (2) to leave, (3) to receive, (4) a few, (5) full, (6) something, (7) dead, (8) wrong.

27. E. *Verbs:* (1) dry, (2) seat, (3) hopeful, (4) marriage, (5) life, (6) tale.

27. F. *Adjectives:* (1) south, (2) delight, (3) gold, (4) beauty, (5) respect, (6) might, (7) to live, (8) to sleep.

27. G. *What is the time?* It is *(a)* 3.15, *(b)* 9.30, *(c)* 1.20, *(d)* 10.45, *(e)* 12.30.

27. H. —

*(a)* £134 5s. 6d.—£98 17s. 9d. = *(d)* $17.21 + $24.35=
*(b)* £ 4413s. 5d.+£19 4s. 11d. = *(e)* $124.08—$91.64=
*(c)* £72 14s. 2d. × 8= *(f)* $12.50 × 6=

## 28. At Sandy Bay.

The train went **merrily** on, **between** fields and meadows. Once they passed through a wood. Henry was sure he caught **sight** of a little **squirrel** on one of the trees; but no one **else** saw it.

When they had been in the train for about three quarters of an hour, Tom exclaimed: "The **sea**!" He had been the first to catch sight of it, as they came round a corner; but Mary was the first to see a **ship**, with great white **sails**. Soon after half-past twelve they arrived at Sandy Bay station. Here they were delighted to see their dear grandparents and Aunt Grace.

Old Mr. Robinson told the porter to take the luggage to his house, which was about ten minutes' walk from the station. They had soon **reached** it, and the children were very happy to be once again at the Red **Cottage**; that was the name of their

grandfather's house. They knew the garden and the house well; it was like a second home to them. The children went to their bedrooms and had a good **wash,** for it had been a dusty **journey.** Then they came **downstairs** and had a meal; but they did not eat much, for they were **longing** to go to the **beach.**

The beach at Sandy Bay is very good indeed; there are long **stretches** of fine **sand,** and **hardly** any **stones. Fortunately** the **tide** was out, and so they could **dig** in the wet sand. They made a great big hill of sand, and when it was **finished** they saw that the tide was coming in, and would soon reach them. So they made the hill as **high** and **firm as possible** and all stood on it. The **waves** came up to it, and all **round** it, **so that** they were on a little **island.** The water **rose** more and more quickly; it nearly **wetted** their feet. The others ran to the beach as **fast** as they could. Little Jane got **frightened** and nearly cried for the second time that day. But Tom took her on his **back,** and carried her **safely** through the water. It was too far to jump.

As it was nearly five, Mother said it was time for them to come into the house for tea. **Everything** was ready for them; and they were ready for tea. They had been working so hard, that they had a very good **appetite;** their grandparents were glad to see them eat so **heartily;** and it **pleased** Aunt Grace that they liked her home-made jam so much.

It was always a great **pleasure** for the old people to have the children staying with them; for they were **healthy** children, and didn't give much **trouble**. Indeed Jack was the most **troublesome** of the whole **party**; he couldn't **get on** with the cat that lived next door; **whenever** he saw her, he **began** barking and wouldn't **stop** until she had run away. It was **impossible** for him to keep quiet when the cat was about.

*Proverbs:* Everything comes to the man who waits.
To know everything is to know nothing.
Between saying and doing there is a long road.

---

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| wet | stop | dig | begin | rise | eat |
| wetted | stopped | dug | began | rose | ate |
| wetted | stopped | dug | begun | risen | eaten |

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| see | sight | |
| wash | wash | |
| | sand | **sandy** |
| | **heart** | hearty |
| | **health** | healthy |
| please | pleasure | |
| **trouble** | trouble | troublesome |
| **stretch** | stretch | |
| wet | | wet |
| fasten | | fast |
| **sail** | sail | |
| | **fortune** | fortunate |

28. A. *Pronounce:* sight, high, frighten, night; he ate eight pears; squirrel, girl, firm; reached, wetted, stopped, pleased; journey, trouble; healthy, pleasure, head, heart; ship, sheep; sight, side; stone, gone, done, one.

28. B. (1) What did the children see on the way to Sandy Bay? (2) Is a squirrel's tail short? (3) Who was the first to see a ship? (4) What was the colour of its sails? (5) How long did the train take? (6) Who was at the station when they arrived? (7) Who took the luggage to the house? (8) How far is the Red Cottage from the station? (9) Had the children been there before? (10) Did they stay in the house long? (11) What did they do on the beach? (12) What was like an island? (13) Why did the water rise? (14) What did the children do then? (15) What did Tom do when Jane nearly cried? (16) By whom had the jam been made? (17) What is jam made of? (18) Were the grandparents fond of the children? (19) What was troublesome? (20) Where did the cat live? (21) When did Jack stop barking at the cat?

28. C. *Draw* a squirrel, a cottage, a ship with sails.

28. D. *For the imperfect put the future and the pluperfect.*

(1) I put the book on the table. (2) He dug a hole in the sand. (3) They stood in the water, which rose quickly. (4) We held them by the hand. (5) We found pretty stones on the beach. (6) He stopped running.

(7) He tried to jump from the little hill. (8) You ate your dinner.

28. E. *Adjectives:* (1) heart, (2) trouble, (3) to hope, (4) to use, (5) might, (6) to respect, (7) to comfort, (8) bush, (9) beauty, (10) gold.

28. F. *Tom tells us what they did on the beach.*

(1) Arrive, Red Cottage; wash, meal. (2) Beach, tide out; dig, sand. (3) Hill, stand; waves, island. (4) Others, run; Jane, frightened. (5) Carry, back; home, tea.

## 29. Mary recites a poem.

After tea the children sat in the garden, and old Mrs. Robinson asked Tom and Mary how they had been getting on at school. They had both been learning some little songs and **poems**, and their Grandmother said she hoped that they would let her hear some of them.

Tom said: "Mary, you've (you have) learnt more than I have, will you begin?"

"Very well, Tom," she replied. "What shall it be?"

"Please," said little Jane, thinking of her dear Snowball, "please let's (let us) have the poem about the kittens."

"Yes," said their **Granny,** "tell me about the kittens."

Granny was in a comfortable garden seat, with Jane on her lap, and the others sat on the grass; but Mary now stood up. You see, she always **recited** standing at school, and it had become a **habit.**

Now this is what she recited:

## THE TWO KITTENS.

Two little kittens, one **stormy** night,
Began to **quarrel**, and then to fight;
One had a mouse, the other had none,
This was the way the fight was begun.

"I'll have that mouse," said the bigger cat;
"You'll[1] have that mouse? We'll[2] see about that!"
"I *will* have that mouse!" said the older one.
"You *shan't*[3] have that mouse!" said the little one.

I told you before, 'twas[4] a stormy night,
When these two little kittens began to fight.
The old woman took her **sweeping** broom,
And swept the kittens right[5] out of the room.

The ground was covered with **frost** and snow,
And the poor little kittens had **nowhere** to go;
So they both lay **down** on the mat at the door,
While the old woman finished sweeping the **floor.**

Then they both **crept** in, as quiet as mice,[6]
All wet with the snow, and cold as ice;
For they found it was better, that stormy night,
To lie down and **sleep**, than to quarrel and fight.

---

[1] = you will. [2] = we shall. [3] = shall not. [4] = it was. [5] = quite.
[6] as quiet as a mouse, as cold as ice, as strong as an ox, as light as a feather, as heavy as lead, as light as day, as dark as night, as white as snow, as black as ink, as hard as stone, as soft as butter, as deep as the sea, as good as gold, as busy as a bee.

*Proverbs:* New brooms sweep clean.
Everything must have a **beginning.**
Great things have small beginnings.
Well begun is half done.
He that begins many things, finishes few.

---

| learn | quarrel | creep | sleep |
|---|---|---|---|
| learnt | quarrelled | crept | slept |
| learnt | quarrelled | crept | slept |

| sweep | lie | fight |
|---|---|---|
| swept | lay | fought |
| swept | lain | fought |

---

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| begin | beginning | |
| | **beginner** | |
| | **storm** | stormy |
| freeze | frost | |
| quarrel | **quarrel** | **quarrelsome** |

---

29. A. *Pronounce:* poem, nowhere; hoped, wished, worked, finished, learnt; quarrel, quarter, quiet, quite; broom, room, moon, noon; down, town, thrown; poor, door, floor, sure.

29. B. (1) Who sat in the garden after tea? (2) What did Mrs. Robinson ask Tom and Mary? (3) What had Tom and Mary been learning? (4) Why did Tom ask Mary to begin? (5) Which poem did Jane want to hear? (6) Why did Jane want to hear the poem about the kittens? (7) Did Mary

recite sitting? (8) Why not? (9) Was it on a fine night that the kittens quarrelled? (10) Why were they quarrelling? (11) What did the old woman do? (12) Where did the kittens lie down? (13) Did they sleep out of doors? (14) Which brooms sweep clean? (15) What is half done?

29. C. As good as —, as light as —, as black as —, as busy as —, as strong as —, as heavy as —, as white as —, as blue as —, as deep as —, as dark as —, as cold as —, as hard as —, as soft as —, as quiet as —.

29. D. *For the present put the imperfect and the perfect.*

(1) The kittens lie on a mat. (2) Jack often fights with other dogs. (3) The cook is sweeping the kitchen. (4) Jane sleeps well. (5) Dogs and cats quarrel. (6) The kitten creeps into the house. (7) I begin to understand English.

29. E. *Nouns:* (1) to begin, (2) to please, (3) to see, (4) to stretch, (5) to sit, (6) to speak.

29. F. *Learn the poem by heart.*

29. G. *The old woman tells us about the kittens.*

(1) Two kittens, older one, little one. (2) Stormy night, frost, snow. (3) Mouse; fight. (4) Broom; kittens out of room. (5) On mat; then creep into room. (6) Better sleep than fight.

## 30. About lady-birds.

When Mary had finished, Granny gave her a kiss and said: "Thank you, dear, you recited that very well. Now what are you going to[1] give us, Tom?"

"I think I'll choose a short one; it's one I found in a book. You know the little **lady-birds,** those **funny** little insects with black **spots**, don't you?" he said, **turning** to Henry and Jane, who hadn't **yet** heard these **lines.**

"Well, when you let a lady-bird walk on your finger, you say to it:

"Lady-bird, lady-bird, **fly** away home!
The field-mouse[2] has gone to her nest,
The **daisies** have **shut** up their **sleepy** red eyes,
And the bees and the birds are at **rest.**"

"Lady-bird, lady-bird, fly away home,
The **glow-worm is lighting** her **lamp,**
The **dew's** falling fast, and your fine **speckled** wings
Will **flag** with the **close clinging damp.**"

Here Henry **interrupted** with: "I don't know what that last line **means.**"

Tom **explained**: "Don't you see, when the dew falls, there is a lot of **wet** in the air, and it **soaks** the lady-bird's wings and they become very heavy

---

[1] I am going to do it = I shall do it soon.

[2] the field-mouse lives in the fields, not in a house.

indeed. The lady-bird can only fly when its wings are **nice** and dry."

"Oh, I see now," said Henry, and Tom went on:

"Lady-bird, lady-bird, fly away home;
The **fairy bells tinkle afar**;[1]
Make **haste**, or they'll catch you and **harness** you fast
With a **cobweb**[2] to **Oberon's car**."

Tom was asked by his Grandmother: "Were you told[3] who Oberon is? I don't suppose Jane knows; do you, **darling**?" — "No, I don't, Granny; who is Oberon, Tom?"

"Oberon's the **king**[4] of **fairyland**, and sometimes in the moonlight he drives about in a beautiful carriage, which just **glides** through the air; and all round it **float** the fairies. It must be a lovely sight!"

---

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| mean | shut | cling |
| meant | shut | clung |
| meant | shut | clung |

In me*a*nt *a* is silent, but not in mean.

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| sleep | **sleep** | sleepy, asleep |
| | **fun** | funny |
| **rest** | rest | |
| | damp | **damp** |

[1] afar = far away. [2] the **spider** makes a cobweb. [3] I was told that by him = he told it me. [4] George V. is the King of England.

30. A. *Pronounce:* gave, have; bed, said, paid, made; turn, learn, firm, early; fall, wall, walk; eyes, lies, nice, dries, ice; heavy, sea, head, eat; past, haste, fast.

30. B. (1) Did Tom choose a long poem? (2) Where had he found it? (3) What are lady-birds? (4) Where do mice live? (5) When do the daisies shut their eyes? (6) Where do bees rest? (7) What is a glow-worm? (8) When does the dew fall? (9) Who explains what you cannot understand? (10) Why must the lady-bird make haste? (11) Who is Oberon? (12) Who is the King of England? (13) What is a lovely sight? (14) When do we light a lamp?

30. C. *Draw* a lady-bird, a lamp, a cobweb with a spider.

30. D. *Opposites:* (1) damp, (2) near, (3) everywhere, (4) the end, (5) little, (6) to stop, (7) to finish, (8) low, (9) full, (10) to receive, (11) possible.

30. E. *Say: (a)* 1.45 p.m., *(b)* 6.30 a.m., *(c)* 3.20 p.m., *(d)* 10.15 p.m., *(e)* 8.50 a. m.

30. F. *Write down the present participles of all the verbs in this lesson.*

30. G. *Give the names of all the trees and flowers you know.*

30. H. *(a)* \$345.50 — \$186.35 =
*(b)* £3 2s. 6d. + £2 17s. 6d. =

## 31. The song that Jane liked.

Mother and Aunt Grace came into the garden, and the children ran to **meet** them, all except Jane, who had an **uncomfortable feeling** that it was bed-time for her. She was right, for Aunt Grace said: "Jane, I am sure you are **feeling** very **tired** and want to shut those little eyes of **yours**; soon you will be a big girl, and then you can stay up as long as the others; but now you must have plenty of sleep — or you will never grow into a big girl like Mary. Will you come with me, dear?"

Jane looked a little unhappy; but she kept back her tears,[1] **especially** when Tom said he would take her to the bedroom on his back, and Aunt Grace **promised** to put her to bed. She got quickly on to Tom's back, gave a kiss to **everybody**, and the three went through the garden into the house. Tom carried her safely **upstairs**[2], said good-night, and went back into the garden. Auntie had quickly **undressed**[3] her little niece, and then sat on the **edge** of her bed for a few minutes.

Aunt Grace had a sweet **voice**, and the children all loved to hear her sing; so when Jane had **emptied**[4] her cup of milk, she put her arms round her Auntie's **neck** and said: "Auntie dear, are you going

---

[1] She did not cry. [2] *cp.* downstairs (Nr. 28). [3] undress, *the opposite of* **dress.**

[4] *adj.* **empty,** *the opposite of* full.




JANE

to sing me the song of Birdie and **Baby**? Aunt Grace knew what she meant, and sang softly:

What does little birdie say,
In her nest at **peep** of day[1]?
"Let me fly", says little birdie;
"Mother, let me fly away!"
"Birdie, rest a little longer,
Till the little wings are stronger!"
So she rests a little longer,
Then she flies away.

What does little baby say,
In her bed at peep of day?
Baby says, like little birdie,
"Let me rise and fly away!"
Baby, sleep a little longer,
Till the little **limbs** are stronger;
If she sleeps a little longer,
Baby, too, shall fly away.

*Proverb:* One hour's sleep before **midnight** is better than two after it.

---

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| This is | my / your / his / her / our / your / their | book; it is | mine. / yours. / his. / hers. / ours. / yours. / theirs. |

[1] when the sun rises.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| empty | feel | meet | sing | grow | fly |
| emptied | felt | met | sang | grew | flew |
| emptied | felt | met | sung | grown | flown |

Tom says: "I shall go there". *(direct speech)*

He says / He said — he will go there. / he would go there. *(indirect speech)*

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| feel | feeling | |
| promise | **promise** | |
| dress | **dress** | |
| empty | | empty |

31. A. *Pronounce:* your, poor, door; grow, now; grown, down, flown, town; grew, few, knew, flew, blue, dew; especially, relation; promise, rise; edge, stretch; voice, boys; peep, heap, sleep; limb, lamb; strong, stronger, strongest.

31. B. (1) Why didn't Jane run to meet her Mother? (2) Where was she sitting? (3) Why must Jane have plenty of sleep? (4) Who told her so? (5) What did Tom do? (6) What did Aunt Grace promise? (7) Where did she sit when she had undressed her? (8) What kind of a voice had Aunt Grace? (9) What song did Jane want to hear? (10) Did Auntie sing it in a loud voice? (11) What did little birdie say? (12) What was the old bird's reply?

31. C. *For the present put the imperfect and the perfect.*

(1) The baby clings to its mother. (2) I do not understand you. (3) She feels sleepy. (4) We often meet your brother. (5) I mean what I say. (6) Many flowers grow in our garden. (7) She sings well. (8) The swallow flies well.

31. D. *Nouns:* (1) to feel, (2) to begin, (3) quarrelsome, (4) damp, (5) to freeze, (6) to marry, (7) to see, (8) to tell.

31. E. *Adjectives:* (1) respect, (2) life, (3) sleep, (4) comfort, (5) hunger, (6) wool.

31. F. *Verbs:* (1) song, (2) deed, (3) food, (4) speech, (5) seat, (6) sight, (7) pleasure, (8) frost.

31. G. This is my house; it is mine. This is your house; it is —, etc.

31. H. *Give the names of the rooms of a house, and of the things in a room.*

## 32. Wynken, Blynken, and Nod.

When the song was at an end,[1] Jane said: "Thank you ever so much,[2] Auntie; I *do* love that song. Won't you read me something? Then I'll promise to be good and go to sleep." Aunt Grace **smiled** and said: "Well, you little **rogue,** I'll just read you one

[1] *or* finished. [2] *or* very much indeed.

thing, and then you must not ask me for anything else. It is called —

WYNKEN, BLYNKEN, AND NOD."

"What *does* that mean, Auntie?"
"You will see; now lie down nicely and **listen.**"

Wynken, Blynken, and Nod one night
Sailed **off** in a wooden **shoe** —
Sailed on a **river** of **crystal** light,
Into a sea of dew.
"Where are you going, and what do you wish?"
The old moon asked the three.
"We have come to fish for the **herring** fish
That live in this beautiful sea;
**Nets** of silver and gold have we!"
Said Wynken,
Blynken,
And Nod.

The old moon **laughed** and sang a song,
As they **rocked** in the wooden shoe,
And the wind that **sped** them all night long[1]
**Ruffled** the waves of dew.
The little **stars** were the herring fish
That lived in that beautiful sea —

---

[1] = during the whole night.

"Now **cast** your nets **wherever** you wish —
Never **afeard** are we!"
So cried the stars to the **fishermen** three:
Wynken,
Blynken,
And Nod.

All night long their nets they threw,
To the stars in the **twinkling foam** —
Then down from the **skies** came the wooden shoe,
Bringing the fishermen home;
'Twas all so **pretty** a **sail**, it seemed
As if it could not be,
And some **folks** thought 'twas a **dream** they'd[1]
**dreamed**
Of sailing that beautiful sea —
But I shall name you the fishermen three:
Wynken,
Blynken,
And Nod.

Wynken and Blynken are two little eyes,
And Nod is a little head,
And the wooden shoe that sailed the skies
Is a **wee**[2] one's **trundle bed.**[3]
So shut your eyes while Auntie sings
Of **wonderful** sights that be,

---

[1] they'd = they had. [2] wee = very small indeed. [3] a little bed on wheels.

And you shall see the beautiful things,
As you rock in the **misty** sea,
Where the old shoe rocked the fishermen three:
Wynken,
Blynken,
And Nod.

During the last **verse** Auntie had spoken the words very, very softly, and when she came to the end, Jane's "Wynken" and "Blynken" were both shut, and she was **already** floating with Henry through the air in a wooden shoe and trying to catch the stars in nets of silver and gold.

*Proverb:* Don't throw away your old shoes till you have got new ones.

---

*sing.:* sky
*plur.:* skies

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| cast | speed | throw |
| cast | sped | threw |
| cast | sped | thrown |

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| smile | **smile** | |
| dream | dream | |
| **wonder** | **wonder** | wonderful |
| | mist | **misty** |

---

32. A. *Pronounce:* rogue, rock; listen, fasten, often; shoes, goes; laugh, bought, bright; cast, last, fast,

haste; afeard, heard, bird, word; threw, new, grew, few, knew, flew; talk, walk, folks; wonder, world, work, word, worm, won't, woman.

32. B. (1) What did Jane want after the song? (2) What did her Aunt read to her then? (3) Where did Wynken, Blynken, and Nod sail? (4) What did the moon ask them? (5) In what did they wish to catch the herrings? (6) Have you ever seen a herring? (7) Have you ever eaten one? (8) What did the moon do when they had replied? (9) Why were the waves of dew not smooth? (10) Were the stars afraid of them? (11) Did the fishermen catch any stars? (12) What did some people think? (13) What is a trundle bed? (14) How did Aunt Grace speak the last verse? (15) Why? (16) What did Jane do in her dream?

32. C. *Draw* a shoe, a star, a herring.

32. D. *Make sentences containing the imperfect of* (1) to read, (2) to throw, (3) to mean, (4) to grow, (5) to sleep; *and the pluperfect of* (6) to meet, (7) to feel, (8) to sweep, (9) to quarrel.

32. E. *Opposites:* (1) to dress, (2) to laugh, (3) comfortable, (4) possible, (5) no one, (6) upstairs, (7) hard, (8) happy, (9) the end, (10) everywhere.

32. F. *Adjectives:* (1) mist, (2) beauty, (3) wonder, (4) wood, (5) wool, (6) sleep, (7) to trouble, (8) health.

32. G. *What is the time? It is* (*a*) 1.15, (*b*) 11.45, (*c*) 6.20, (*d*) 8.40, (*e*) 5.30.

32. H. (*a*) \$ 95.20 + \$ 104.80 =
(*b*) \$ 231.15 — \$ 73.70 =
(*c*) £15 13s. 4d. + £4 6s. 8d. =
(*d*) £9 15s. $0^3/_4$d. — £7 6s. $1^1/_2$d. =

## 33. A letter to Father.

When Jane had been taken to bed, Mrs. Robinson said to Mary: "I have been writing to Father, but I've not **closed** the **letter;** I thought you **might** like to **send** him a few lines." Mary ran indoors to fetch pen, ink, and paper, and began writing **at once.** This is what she said:

The Red Cottage,
Sandy Bay,
*15th June*[1] *1928.*

My darling Father,

It is just lovely here and we are having great fun. We were on the beach all the afternoon and **built** a very big **castle.** The tide came up and washed all round it. Grandpapa has been busy all the afternoon, so we have not seen much of him; but Granny has been sitting with us in the garden. We all

---

[1] N.B. In dates you may write *Jan.* (for *January*), *Feb., Apr., Aug., Sept., Oct., Nov., Dec.*

**miss** you very much;[1] do try to come as soon as you can. I hope you'll arrive early on Saturday.

With many kisses,

Your loving daughter,

MARY.

As she reached the last words, her Mother called: "Mary, have you written your letter? You must make haste. The letter **box** is **cleared**[2] at half-past six, and it's twenty past now." Mary brought her letter, her mother **slipped** it into the **envelope**, put a 1½d. **stamp**[3] on, and the three children and Jack went off to **post** it. They were indeed only just in time; the **postman** was already **unlocking**[4] the letter box. They **dropped** the letter in the box and he put it in his bag with the others. They knew the postman quite well and **decided** to go with him to the station, where he had to fetch the letters that came by the train. They reached home a little before seven.

A few big **drops** of rain were falling as they came into the house. The sky had been quite clear all the afternoon; but now it was covered with clouds, and the wind was blowing.

The children were all tired and, after drinking a **glass** of milk and eating some biscuits, they were glad to go to bed. Meanwhile the weather had grown

---

[1] *Or* we are **sorry** *(opposite of* glad) that you are not here with us. [2] = emptied. [3] 2d. stamps are yellow, 1½d. stamps are brown, 1d. stamps are red, ½d. stamps are green. [4] unlock *is the opposite of* **lock.**

**worse** and worse; they could hear the wind crying in the trees. It seemed as if it were going to be a stormy night. Soon they fell asleep; but still the wind **galloped** up and down the road.

Whenever the moon and stars are **set,**[1]
Whenever the wind is high,
All night long, in the **dark** and wet,
A man goes **riding** by.
**Late** in the night when the fires are out,
Why does he gallop and gallop about?

Whenever the trees are crying **aloud,**[2]
And ships are **tossed** at sea,
By, on the **highway, low** and loud,
By at the **gallop** goes he;
By at the gallop he goes, and then
By he comes back at the gallop again.

*Proverbs:* What you do speaks louder than what you say.
It's never too late to learn.
Better late than never.
A little too late, much too late.

---

| *positive* | *comparative* | *superlative* |
|---|---|---|
| bad | worse | **worst** |
| slip drop | send | build set |
| slipped dropped | sent | built set |
| slipped dropped | sent | built set |
| ride | write | I may |
| rode | wrote | I might |
| ridden | written | |

[1] When the moon has set, we can no longer see it. [2] aloud *is an adverb;* **loud** *is the adjective.*

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| close | | close |
| build | **building** | |
| clear | | clear |
| drop | drop | |
| gallop | gallop | |

33. A. *Pronounce:* close the door; he is close to me; castle, fasten, listen; build, biscuit, busy; clear, dear, here, near, heard, cleared; post, cost, tossed; he locks the box; reach, fetch, catch; worse, verse; grown, down, flown.

33. B. (1) To whom had Mrs. Robinson written? (2) Who wrote to him too? (3) Did she write in pencil? (4) What was the date? (5) What is to-day's date? (6) What had the children built? (7) Was Mary sorry that her father was not at Sandy Bay? (8) Why had the children seen little of their grandfather? (9) Why did Mrs. Robinson tell Mary to make haste? (10) What is the colour of a half-penny stamp? (11) of a penny stamp? (12) What was the postman doing when they saw him? (13) How was the weather in the evening? (14) What did the wind do? (15) Have you ever ridden on a galloping horse?

33. C. *Draw* a sand castle, a drop of rain, a galloping horse, a glass of milk.

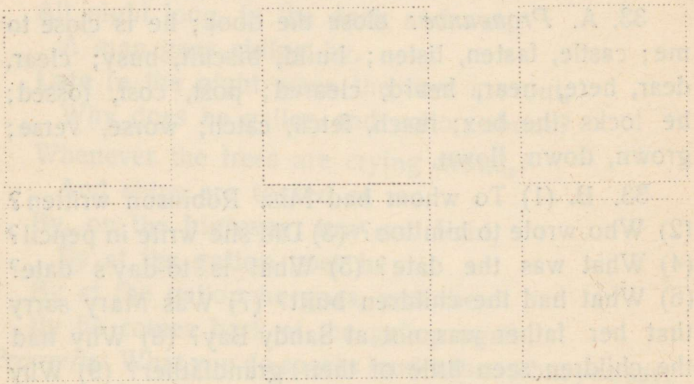
33. D. *Make sentences containing the imperfect, the future and the perfect of:*

(1) to build, (2) to send, (3) to stop, (4) to set, (5) to ride, (6) to close, (7) to take, (8) to throw.

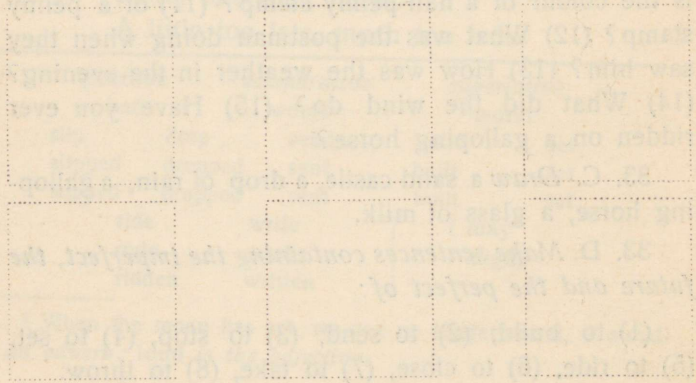
33. E. *Make sentences containing the comparatives of* (1) big, (2) good, (3) bad, (4) happy, (5) lovely, (6) beautiful, (7) full, (8) empty, (9) thin.

33. F. *Learn the poem by heart.*

**English Stamps.**



**American Stamps.**



## 34. Something to guess.

When the children woke up next morning, there was less wind, but the rain was pouring down. They could **neither**[1] play on the beach **nor**[1] in the garden in weather like that.

It was a good thing that Aunt Grace had many nice books with pictures and stories; it was better still that old Mr. Robinson had nothing to do that morning. When he had **filled**[2] his **pipe** and lighted it, he said to the children: "You young folks are very **clever**, you know all **sorts** of things. Now I wonder if you can answer some **riddles**. Would you like to try?"

As they all said: "Yes, Grandpapa!" he asked them these riddles. Some of them they **guessed**, and some gave them trouble. Can *you* guess them?

1. When were E and O the only **vowels**?

2. Which **letter**[3] is the most useful to a deaf old woman?

3. What comes twice in a moment, once in a minute, and never in a hundred years?

---

[1] **"Either** Tom **or** Henry" *is the opposite of* "neither Tom nor Henry." [2] He made it full of **tobacco.** [3] *a, b, c, d,* etc. **are** letters.

4. Why is the letter A like twelve o'clock?

5. How could you make a tea-table into food?

6. Which letter of the **alphabet**[1] goes all round **Great Britain**[2]?

7. Why is the letter T[3] like an island?

8. Which is the strongest day in the week?

9. What word becomes shorter by the **addition** of a **syllable**?

10. When does a goose look like a snowball?

11. Why do we all go to bed?

12. What relation is that child to its father, that is not its father's own son?

13. What is it that we all like to have, but never want to keep?

14. What is that which grows larger, the more you take from it?

15. What **belongs** only to you, and yet is used more by others than by yourself?

16. What colour were the winds and waves in the storm?

17. As long as I live, I eat; but when I drink, I die.

18. Cheese often comes after meat, but what often comes after cheese?

---

[1] all the letters from *a* to *z*. [2] *adj.* **British**; the British **Empire**, the **Dominion** of **Canada**. [3] *t, l, f,* etc. are **consonants.**

19. What is everything doing at the same time?

20. Two geese before a goose, and two geese behind a goose, and a goose in the middle. How many geese in all?

21. What is that which was to-morrow, and will be yesterday?

*If you cannot guess the answers, you will find them on page 162.*

---

34. A. *Pronounce:* either, neither, brother, weather; book, cook, moon, afternoon, broom, room, good, food; clever, ever, even, seven; guessed, west, rest, dressed.

34. B. *Nouns:* (1) to build, (2) to add, (3) happy, (4) to speak, (5) to sing, (6) to tell.

34. C. *Adjectives:* (1) to trouble, (2) wonder, (3) comfort, (4) hunger, (5) to quarrel, (6) fortune.

34. D. *Verbs:* (1) full, (2) frost, (3) sight, (4) seat, (5) fast, (6) contents, (7) deed, (8) life.

34. E. *Opposites:* (1) dark, (2) to lock, (3) out of doors, (4) downstairs, (5) to live, (6) before, (7) heavy, (8) young, (9) neither I nor you, (10) to dress, (11) comfortable, (12) shorter.

34. F. *Give the imperfect and past participle of:* (1) send, (2) set, (3) sit, (4) lie, (5) lay, (6) freeze, (7) build, (8) ride, (9) sleep, (10) mean, (11) throw, (12) take, (13) quarrel, (14) say, (15) read, (16) sing, (17) drink, (18) go, (19) tell, (20) know, (21) drive,

(22) grow, (23) feel, (24) leave, (25) carry, (26) fill, (27) bite, (28) draw, (29) give, (30) come, (31) make, (32) catch, (33) do, (34) bring, (35) fight, (36) think, (37) see, (38) buy, (39) slip, (40) choose, (41) tear, (42) meet, (43) fall, (44) ly.

34. G. *Give the plural of* (1) mouse, (2) house, (3) woman, (4) foot, (5) bench, (6) penny, (7) fox.

## 35. The wishing ring (I).

"And now," said Mr. Robinson, "I'll tell you a **fairy-tale**, which I read yesterday." The children listened to no one else so gladly as to their grandfather. When their grandfather had filled his pipe again, he began:

Once upon a time there was a young farmer, who worked very **industriously**, and yet didn't seem to get on. One day, as he was **ploughing** his field, a **strange** old woman came along; and this is what she said to him:

"Why are you working like this, and all for nothing? Go **straight** on for two days, until you come to a great **oak**, standing by itself and higher than all the other trees. **Fell**[1] it, and your **fortune** is made."

The farmer didn't wait to be told a second time. He took his **axe**, and when he had gone straight on for two days, he saw the great oak. He began felling

[1] fell=make to fall; *cp*, set (make to sit), lay (make to lie).

it at once; and when it came crashing down, a nest fell from its boughs on to the ground, and two little eggs in it were broken. From one of them came a gold ring, from the other a wonderful bird, which grew and grew until it was very large. Indeed it seemed to the farmer as if it would never stop growing. It rose a little above the earth, then said to the frightened farmer:

"You have set me free, and I reward you for it by giving you the ring that was in the other egg. It is a wishing ring. If you turn it on your finger and say to yourself a wish, that wish will be fulfilled. But you can only have one wish: after that it is like any other ring. Therefore think carefully before you wish."

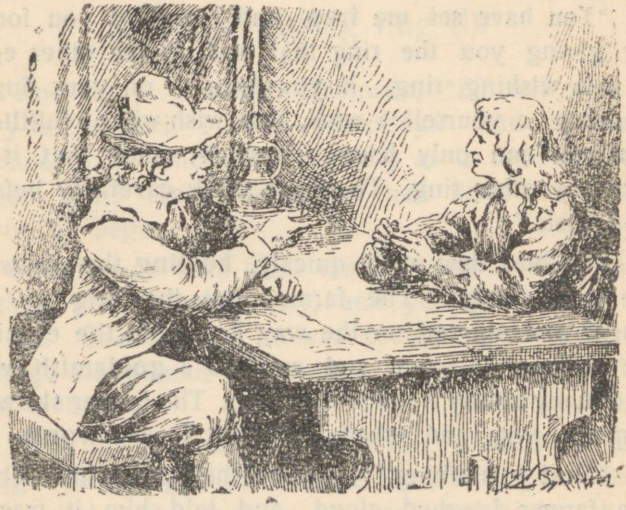
The bird flew away quickly, beating the air with its great wings. The farmer put the ring on his finger and started on the way home. In the evening he came to a town, and went to a goldsmith who had many costly rings in his shop. The farmer showed him the ring, and asked him what it was worth.

"Next to nothing,"[1] replied the goldsmith. Then the farmer laughed aloud, and told him it was a wishing ring, and worth more than all the rings in his shop put together.

Now this goldsmith was a bad man. He invited the farmer to stay the night, saying: "It will bring

[1] *Or:* hardly anything.

me good fortune, if a man with a **treasure** like yours spends the night here." He gave him several **bottles** of **wine** to drink, and **talked** to him like a friend; but at night, when the farmer was asleep, he cleverly took the ring from his finger, and put another one in its place, which looked **exactly** like the wishing ring.



In the morning he could hardly wait until the farmer left. As soon as he was gone, he **hastened** into his shop, closed the **shutters,** locked the door, and said, as he turned the ring on his finger: "I wish to have a hundred **thousand** sovereigns."

**Scarcely** had he spoken[1] the words, when sovereigns came raining down. The coins fell on his head, his **shoulders** and his arms; they fell all over his **body**. He tried to reach the door, but the rain of gold made it impossible. Soon he was **buried** beneath the gold, and still it rained. At last the floor could **bear** the **weight** no longer, and he and the gold fell into the **cellar.** When the **neighbours** heard the **noise** of it, they **burst** open the door; but they were too late to give him any **help,** he was already dead. So they said: "What a **misfortune** to have so much **money!**" and **helped** themselves to as much as they could lay hands on.

*Proverbs:* Birds of a feather **flock** together.
A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
What is worth doing is worth doing well.
Much **talk,** little work.
Plough deeply and you will have plenty of corn.

---

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bury | fulfil | burst | beat | break | bear | show |
| buried | fulfilled | burst | beat | broke | bore | showed |
| buried | fulfilled | burst | beaten | broken | borne | shown |

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| fill | | full |
| add | addition | |
| eat | | **eatable** |

[1] = he had scarcely (hardly) spoken.

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| plough | plough | |
| | industry | industrious |
| reward | reward | |
| care | care | careful |
| cost | | costly |
| hasten | haste | |
| weigh | weight | |
| talk | talk | |
| help | help | |

35. A. *Pronounce:* know, how, throw, low, now, show; strange, page, edge; eight, straight, late, weight; axe, packs; ox, flocks; above, move, love; worth, worse; free, three; treasure, pleasure; except, exactly; careful, scarcely; shoulder, young, journey, trouble; month, money; neighbour, industrious, breakfast, gallop.

35. B. (1) Who got the goldsmith's money? (2) How did the goldsmith get it? (3) How much did he wish to have? (4) Where was he when he asked for it? (5) Where was the farmer? (6) What had he told the goldsmith about the ring? (7) How did he know this? (8) Where did the bird come from? (9) Why did the tree fall? (10) Who told the farmer to fell it?

35. C. *Draw* an axe, a ring, a bottle.

35. D. *Give the names of (a) the trees, (b) the parts of the body that you know.*

35. E. *Write sentences containing the adverbs to* (1) good, (2) careful, (3) happy, (4) industrious, (5) beautiful.

35. F. *Which coins are made (a) of gold, (b) of silver, (c) of bronze?*

35. G. *In the evening the goldsmith tells his wife about the ring.*

(1) Afternoon; busy, shop. (2) Farmer, come in, show ring. (3) Ring, worth little; farmer, explain. (4) Farmer, drink, sleepy; take ring. (5) Try ring, to-morrow.

## 36. The wishing ring (II).

Meanwhile the farmer went home with a light heart,[1] and showed the ring to his wife. "Now we are happy people," he said; "our fortune is made. But we must be careful to choose the right thing."

His wife at once said: "Don't you think it would be a good thing to have some more **land?** There's a nice piece between two of our fields; what do you say to our wishing for that?"

But he replied: "I'm sure we can do better than that. If we work hard for a year, we may perhaps be **able**[2] to buy it."

So they worked very industriously; and as the **harvest**[3] was good, they had enough money to buy the piece of land, and even something over.[4] "Do you see," he said smiling, "that piece of land belongs to us now, and we still have our wish!"

---

[1] *Opposite:* with a heavy heart. [2] I am able to do it = I can do it. [3] The harvest is in the autumn. [4] They had some money left.

Then his wife thought it would be well to wish for another cow and a horse. "My good wife," said the farmer, **jingling** the money in his **pocket**, "why should we use our wish for getting such a **trifle**? I **believe** we shall get a horse and cow even without it."

**To be sure**,[1] by the end of the second year they had made enough money to buy the cow and the horse. Then the farmer was pleased and said: "Again we have got what we wanted, and the wish is still ours. What fortunate people we are!" But his wife spoke to him seriously, and tried to **persuade** him to make use of his wishing ring.

"I can't[2] understand you," she said, quite **angrily**; "you always **used** to **complain** and to wish that you had all sorts of things; and now, when you might have anything you please, you work from morning till night, and let the best years of your life **go by**[3]. You might be a king; you might be a great big farmer; you might have **chests**[4] full of silver and gold in your cellar; and you are nothing, just because you won't decide on your wish!"

"Don't keep **worrying** me about this wish," the farmer answered firmly. "We are both of us still young, and life is long. Remember there's only one wish in the ring. It would be easy to make a mistake;

---

[1] = indeed. [2] can't (= cannot): *cp.* shan't (29). [3] = pass away. [4] A chest is a large box.

how **bitterly** we should **regret** it! Perhaps a time will come when things go wrong, and we shall want the ring badly. Have we not been fortunate, **since** we've had the ring? Be **reasonable**, my dear. Meanwhile you can go on **considering** what you would like me to wish."

*Proverb:* One day is as good as two for him who does everything in its place.

---

regret — I shall: I should
regretted
regretted

I used to do it = { I did it often / I was able to do it once.

I go on / I keep } working = { I work without stopping. / I am always working.

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| | **reason** | reasonable |
| regret | **regret** | |
| | **anger** | angry |

---

36. A. *Pronounce:* hard, heart; enough, laugh; jingle, twinkle; believe, receive, leave; sure, during, poor, floor; persuade, guard, buy, build; longer, stronger, anger, strange; worry, word, world, work; wrong, write; would, could, should.

36. B. (1) What did the farmer's wife want first of all? (2) What was the farmer's reply? (3) What did she want at the end of the year? (4) What did

her husband say then? (5) What made her angry? (6) What did she wish him to become? (7) Did he not do as she wished?

36. C. *What animals are there on a farm?*

36. D. *What can you say for* (1) I often went there. (2) He kept working. (3) I had hardly said it, when he came. (4) I can do it.

36. E. *Which adjectives ending in (a)* -able, *(b)* -ful *do you know?*

36. F. *Adjectives:* (1) care, (2) cost, (3) to fill, (4) to close, (5) to sleep, (6) gold.

36. G. *The farmer tells us how he made enough money to buy some land, a horse and a cow.*
(My wife and I worked very industriously, etc.)

## 37. The wishing ring (III).

What the farmer said was true, the ring seemed to have brought them good fortune. With every year the farmer grew **wealthier**; but he still worked hard all day. Then in the evening he used to sit at his **ease** on a bench in **front** of[1] his comfortable house, and **smoke** his pipe, and talk with his neighbours.

The years went on,[2] and still no wish had been spoken. Sometimes his wife **suggested** a wish; but

[1] in front of = before. [2] *Or* went by.

he always replied that there was still plenty of time. At last she saw that she could not persuade him, and so she **gave up**[1] speaking about the ring **altogether**[2]. **Though** the farmer often looked at his ring, and turned it on his finger, he took good care not to **utter** a wish.

Thirty, forty years had gone by; the farmer and his wife had grown old, their hair was white as snow, but the wish had not yet been uttered. Then **God** was good to them, and let them both die in the same night.

Their children and grandchildren stood **around** them, **weeping.**[3] One of them suggested that they should take the ring from the old man's finger as a **remembrance**; but the eldest son said:

"No, let our dear Father take this ring into the **grave.**[4] He always **treasured** it; and Mother used often to look at it too. Perhaps she once gave it to Father, when they were young."

So the old farmer was buried with his wife, and on his finger was the ring which was supposed to be a wishing ring, but which was not; and yet it had brought him as much happiness as a man could **desire.** For you see, my dear children, a poor thing in good hands is better than a fine thing in bad hands.

* * * * *

---

[1] I give up doing it = I stop doing it, I do not do it any longer. [2] = quite. [3] Tears were in their eyes. [4] When a man is buried, he lies in his grave.

The children all thanked their grandfather for his story; and as the rain had nearly stopped, Mary, Tom, and Henry put on thick **boots** and went **shopping** with Aunt Grace; Jane had to[1] stay at home, because there was a big hole in the **sole** of her boot. Aunt Grace had to get some meat at the **butcher's,**[2] and a **loaf** of bread at the **baker's**; and Tom took Jane's little boots to the **shoemaker's,** to have them **re-soled**; he promised to send them the next day. "Please don't **forget,**" said Tom. Then they went to the **Post Office,** which was at the **grocer's,** and bought some stamps and **postcards.** They also bought a **pound** of **coffee** there, which cost 2s., and three pounds of sugar. When they got home it was nearly time for supper.

*Proverbs:* Take care of the pence and the pounds
will take care of themselves.
Half a loaf is better than no bread.
Early to bed and early to rise,
Makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise.

---

*sing.:* loaf *plur.:* loaves

| *positive* | *comparative* | *superlative* |
|---|---|---|
| old | older | oldest |
| | (elder *cp.* No. 14) | eldest |
| shop | weep | forget |
| shopped | wept | forgot |
| shopped | wept | forgotten |

[1] I have to do it = I must do it. [2] at the butcher's [shop]

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| | **wealth** | wealthy |
| | ease | easy |
| remember | remembrance | |
| treasure | treasure | |
| shop | shop | |
| desire | **desire** | |
| sole | sole | |

---

37. A. *Pronounce:* true, who, knew; health, wealth, well; ease, freeze, trees; front, don't; oak, smoke, rogue; though, through; stood, boot, foot, food; fire, desire, tired; butcher, butter, put, pull, supper; loaf, loaves.

37. B. (1) What did the farmer do when he was wealthy? (2) Do you work hard too? (3) What did he do in the evening? (4) Did his wife keep suggesting wishes? (5) Did he utter a wish? (6) How was God good to them? (7) Who stood round them? (8) What did one of them suggest? (9) What was the eldest son's reply? (10) What is better than a fine thing in bad hands? (11) Why did Jane not go out with the others? (12) Where did Aunt Grace go? (13) What did they buy at the grocer's? (14) Which is heavier, a pound of feathers or a pound of gold? (15) What does a loaf of bread cost? (16) What does a postcard cost?

37. C. *What do we buy* (1) at a baker's, (2) at a butcher's, (3) at a farm, (4) at a grocer's, (5) at a shoemaker's, (6) at the Post Office?

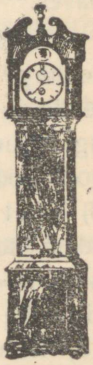
37. D. *For the present put the imperfect.*

(1) The ice sometimes breaks. (2) He fulfils his promises. (3) I often forget what I am told. (4) I regret that you cannot come.

37. E. *Opposites*: (1) to remember, (2) poor, (3) late, (4) to weep, (5) bitter, (6) pleased, (7) to reply.

37. F. *Give the comparative and superlative of* (1) much, (2) little, (3) good, (4) bad, (5) happy, (6) thin, (7) useful, (8) big.

## 38. At midnight (I).

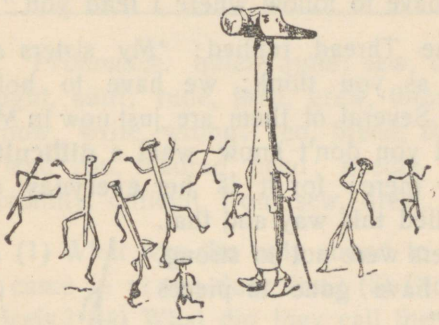


All was quiet in the house. The only **sound** to be heard[1] was the **ticking** of the grandfather's clock downstairs; and sometimes Jack gave a little **bark** in his sleep. But when people are at rest, other things are awake. The clock **struck** twelve; and before it had finished striking, Mary saw the door of her bedroom open. I do not know why they came into her bedroom; but **certainly**[2] they came.

First there was a large **Hammer**, walking along rather **awkwardly**, because its head was so heavy. All round it **hopped** and **danced** a great number of

[1] = that one could hear. [2] I am certain of it = I am sure of it.

**Nails**, big and small; and they were **rude** to the Hammer, calling it **"Fat-head"** and **"Wooden leg!"**

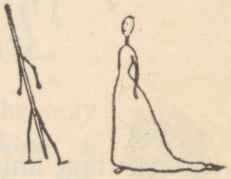


with their thin little voices. The hammer did not seem to hear them; at last, however, he said angrily: "Be quiet, you good-for-nothing Nails, or I'll **knock** you on the head!" And when they still went on — sure enough he came down with a **terrible bang!** and one wee little Nail, who had been more rude than the **rest,** was so badly knocked on the head, that he went through the floor and could not get out again. The others tried to pull him out, but it was quite impossible.

Scarcely had the Hammer and the Nails gone (Mary could not see where they went to), when the door opened again. It was a **Needle** that walked in, **followed** by a long white **Thread.** I'm afraid they were quarrelling.

The Needle with its one eye looked down on the Thread and said: "I'm tired of taking you and your sisters through holes. I have to do all the hard work; you only have to follow where I **lead** you."

But the Thread replied: "My sisters and I are not **idle,** as you think; we have to hold things together. Several of them are just now in Mary's last dress; and you don't know what a **difficult** thing it is to stay there; for it is her **everyday** dress and it gets pulled this way and that. If my sisters were not so strong, it would have gone to pieces long **ago.**"



"But then you are at rest when she is not **wearing** the dress."

"Well, *you* are not **sewing** all day. You have a very good time in the work-**basket,** talking to the other Needles and making **love** to the **Pins.** You are even **friendly** with the **Scissors,** who cut me off from my dear sisters."

*Proverbs:* You must strike the **iron** while it is hot.
Do not **hang** all on one nail.
Do not put all your eggs into one basket.

---

| hop | lead | strike | hang | wear |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| hopped | led | struck | hung | wore |
| hopped | led | struck | hung | worn |

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| | friend | friendly |
| love | love | lovely |

---

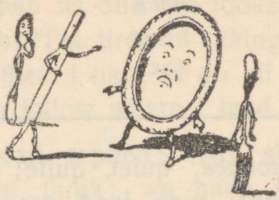
38. A. *Pronounce:* quiet, quite; saw, draw, awkward, caught, aunt; rude, food, grew, through, who; knock, know, write, wrong; red, bread, thread, lead pencil, I lead you, reading, head; needle, idle, little, bottle; certainly, difficult, iron; sew, drew, dew.

38. B. (1) What was the only sound to be heard? (2) What came in at the door first? (3) Did the Nails behave nicely? (4) What did they call the Hammer? (5) What did he answer? (6) Was the rude little Nail pulled out by the rest? (7) Who came in next? (8) Is the Thread idle? (9) What is there in a work-basket? (10) Why should you not hang all on one nail? What do we do with (11) a hammer? (12) a needle? (13) scissors? (14) a pen? (15) a jug?

38. C. *For the present put the pluperfect, giving also the negative and interrogative forms.*

(1) The smith strikes the iron. (2) The Nails hop round the Hammer. (3) He wears a brown coat. (4) He hangs it on a nail.

38. D. *Say in other words:* (1) It was the only house one could see. (2) It was the only tree one could fell. (3) It was more than one could bear. (4) I gave up writing to him.



## 39. At midnight (II).

What more the Needle and Thread said, Mary could not hear, there was such a noise! What could it be?

Clatter, rattle! Rattle, clatter!

For the third time the door opened, and who should walk in but[1] a great **round Plate**, a **Knife**, a **Fork** and a **Spoon**. They were quarrelling too! "**Really**," thought Mary, "these poor things have a good **deal** of trouble in their lives. They have to work for us by day; and at night they don't **enjoy** themselves, but spend their time in quarrelling. I wonder why these four are in such a bad **temper**."

She soon found out: it was because they could not decide which of them should go first. Think of their quarrelling about such a trifle!

Said the Plate: "I'm the biggest, and I believe I'm the most beautiful. Look at the lovely blue line that runs all along my edge!"

Said the Knife: "**Size** isn't everything. I think I have a much better **figure** than you. And just consider

[1] *Or:* just think what walked in.

how useful I am! I can cut meat or bread or **pudding;** and I **peel** apples and pears, and even **potatoes,** though I don't like doing that."

Said the Fork: "Well, suppose you have cut and peeled these things, what is the good of you, without me? I take the food from the Plate to the mouth, and I am the real **helper** of man. You are not **allowed** to come near his mouth, Mr. Knife, you know that!"

Said the Spoon: "I am man's oldest friend. I help baby to his **porridge,** and when he gets quite old, I am still the one he uses most. He uses me for every meal, and won't even drink his tea or coffee without me. I am his dearest friend, and I **ought**[1] to go first."

Just as he said that, Mary heard the clock strike again. And in the middle of the room, where the moon cast its **rays, appeared** a sweet little mouse. It stood on its hind legs and waving the other two in the air it said softly and **slowly:**

Dickory, dickory, dock,
The mouse ran up the clock.
The clock struck one
And down she ran,
Dickory, dickory, dock!



[1] ought *cp.* brought, thought. I ought to go first = It is right that I should go first. It is right for me to go first.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *sing.:* | knife | life | potato |
| *plur.:* | knives | lives | potatoes |

*These are irregular plurals;* "dogs, cats" *are regular.*

| *verb* | *noun* |
|---|---|
| enjoy | **joy** |
| help | help |
| | helper |
| peel | **peel** |

39. A. *Pronounce:* hear, heard, appear, really; knife, knock, know; size, rise, tries, eyes; figure, pleasure, sure; potatoes, follows, goes; village, carriage, porridge; hind, find, wind; slow, now, throw, how, house.

39. B. (1) Why could Mary hear no more of what the Needle and Thread said? (2) Who made the noise? (3) Why were they quarrelling? (4) In what way is a knife useful? (5) Why is the spoon man's oldest friend? (6) What appeared at one o'clock? (7) How did it speak? (8) What were its words?

39. C. *Make a list of all the animals you know.*

39. D. *Opposites:* (1) difficult, (2) a good deal, (3) cold, (4) cool, (5) quiet, (6) industrious, (7) to forget, (8) to weep, (9) bitter.

39. E. *What do we use* (1) when we eat meat? (2) when we eat pudding? (3) when we drink tea?

39. F. *Say: (a)* 1.15 p.m., *(b)* 9.45 a.m., *(c)* 2.30 p.m., *(d)* 6.20 p.m.

39. G. *Which of the following nouns have irregular plurals?*

(1) mouse, (2) rat, (3) knife, (4) cherry, (5) pear, (6) potato, (7) bough, (8) leaf, (9) man, (10) boy, (11) child, (12) brother, (13) woman, (14) daisy, (15) rose, (16) ox, (17) cow.

## **40.** A delightful afternoon.

When Mary woke up next morning, she looked about on the floor and (would you believe it?) she saw the head of a bright little nail! So of course her dream must have been true. She told it to Tom—but he only laughed! Jane, who slept in the same bedroom, had not heard the Nails saying things to the Hammer. Indeed, she did not want to talk about anything. She did **not** look **at all** well; she woke up with a **headache,** and had to stay in bed. Her cheeks were rather pale and even her appetite was not as good as **usual.** She thought she was *very* **ill,** but it was really nothing serious, and in the afternoon she was up again, and could even go for a walk with the others. Fortunately, the shoemaker had not forgotten his promise, and had sent her boots.

They were all very happy, because Grandfather had suggested the walk. Tom fetched his **hat** and **stick** for

him, Henry called his dog, who was barking at the cat next door, and soon after two they left the house. It was a very hot day, and the girls were glad of their straw hats; but Tom and Henry wanted to get very brown, so they only wore **caps.** Soon they had left Sandy Bay behind them, and were in a country **lane.** There the **shade** was cool, and it was very **pleasant** to walk along. Rain had fallen the day before, and so the road was not very dusty. They saw many **butterflies,** and Henry wanted to catch one with his cap; but the butterfly did not allow him to do so. It was too quick for him, and soon flew merrily over his head, where he could not possibly reach it.

After a **while** they came to a **brook,** and they all sat down on the **bank** and **watched** the little fishes in the **shady** places. When Jack **entered** the water, however, they **scattered** in all **directions.** Of course Jack didn't want to do them any **harm;** but I don't wonder that they were frightened. Just **imagine** yourselves swimming about in the water and a thing as big as a house **suddenly** appearing and walking in among you!

Mr. Robinson and the children **crossed** the brook **by means of** a wooden **bridge;** on the other side there was a little wood and here it was delightfully cool. Now and then a **sunbeam** found its way through, but not often. The leaves were so thick, you see. Grandfather found a nice spot under a tree; he **leaned** his back against it, pulled out his pipe and began to

smoke. Tom and Henry went to look for a nest which they had seen two years ago; but though they tried very hard, they **failed** to find it. However, they saw some squirrels jumping from branch to branch.

Mary and Jane did not go far from their Grandfather; for they did not like to leave him alone. They **picked** some sweet-smelling flowers for home — they hoped that these would still be alive when their Father came on Saturday; so they only picked the ones with half-open **buds.**

Soon they all **gathered** round their Grandfather, and **begged** him to tell them another story.

"Do you think," he said with a smile, "that I have a story for every day in the year? Well, let me start another pipe, and I'll see what I can do then."

So they watched him knocking the **ashes** out of his pipe and filling it with tobacco out of a **tin;** and then he struck a **match,** lighted the pipe and was ready.

*Proverbs:* Cap in hand never did any harm.
No **smoke** without fire.

---

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| lean | beg | swim |
| leaned | begged | swam |
| leaned | begged | swum |

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| please | pleasure | pleasant |
| | shade | shady |
| smoke | smoke | |
| **harm** | harm | **harmful** |

40. A. *Pronounce:* woke, smoke, oak, rogue; believe, receive; headache, take; treasure, usual; sticks, six; head, had, hat; shade, laid, played; pleasant, pleasure, please; watch, want, wall, walk; wonder, one, once, worn, work; cross, toss, cost, soft, off, coffee; leaned, sent, went; bud, but.

40. B. (1) What did Mary see on the floor? (2) Where had Jane slept? (3) What did Tom do when Mary told him about the Hammer and the Nails? (4) Was Jane very ill? (5) Who went for a walk? (6) Where did they go? (7) Why did Henry not catch the butterfly? (8) What did the fishes do when Jack walked into the brook? (9) How did the children cross the brook? (10) Where was it cool? (11) What did Tom and Henry look for? (12) Did the girls go with them? (13) For whom did they pick flowers? (14) What did they say to their grandfather? (15) What did the grandfather smoke?

40. C. *Draw* a butterfly, a wooden bridge, a pipe, a cap.

40. D. *What animals do you see when you go for a walk in the country?*

40. E. *Put the verbs in this lesson into the present; e. g.* When Mary awakes, she looks about, etc.

40. F. *Adjectives:* (1) to please, (2) to comfort, (3) to love, (4) friend, (5) wealth, (6) to use, (7) ease, (8) industry, (9) anger.

40. G. *Give a list of all the irregular (1) plurals, (2) comparatives, that you can remember.*

40. H. *To which verbs do the following belong:* (1) went, (2) did, (3) swept, (4) taken, (5) held, (6) heard, (7) met, (8) flown, (9) broke, (10) begged, (11) led, (12) hung, (13) forgotten, (14) made, (15) blew.

## 41. Lazy Jim (I).

Once upon a time there was a boy whose name was Jim,[1] and he lived with his mother in a little cottage. They were very poor, and the old woman got her **living** by washing for other people; but Jim was so **lazy** that he would do nothing but lie in the sun in the hot weather and sit by the fire in the winter time. So they called him Lazy Jim. His mother could not get him to do anything at all for her, and at last told him, one Monday, that if he didn't begin to work for his porridge, she would turn him out[2] to get his living as best he could.[3]

Jim saw that she was serious. He really didn't want to be a **beggar**; so next morning he went to a farmer, and worked all day for a penny. But as he was coming home, never having had any money before, he lost it in passing over a brook. "You **stupid** boy to **lose** your money," said his mother, "you ought to have put it in your pocket." — "I'll do so another time," replied Jim.

On Wednesday Jim went out again, and this time the farmer gave him a jug of milk for his day's work.

---

[1] Jim = James; Tom = Thomas. [2] out (of the house). [3] Or: as well as he could.

Jim put it in his big pocket, and it was all **spilt,** long before he got home. "Dear me!" said the old woman, "you ought to have carried it on your head." — "I'll do so another time," replied Jim.

Now on Thursday, when he had done another day's work for the farmer, he received a large **pat** of butter. He put it on his head and, well — you can imagine what **happened!** "You **silly fellow,"** said his mother, "you ought to have carried it very carefully in your hands." — "I'll do so another time," replied Jim.

Jim was tired of working for the farmer, so on Friday he went to a baker, who would give him nothing for his work but a large cat. Jim took the cat, and began carrying it very carefully in his hands; but in a short time Pussy **scratched** him so badly that he had to let it go. When he got home, his mother said to him: "How **foolish** you are! You ought to have tied it with a string, and pulled it along after you." — "I'll do so another time," replied Jim.

On Saturday, Jim went to a butcher, who gave him a fine leg of mutton in the evening. Jim took it, tied it with a string, and pulled it after him through the **dirt;** and of course when he got home, it was quite **spoilt** and couldn't be eaten.[1] His mother was very angry with him. "You great stupid!" she said to him, "you ought to have carried it on your shoulder." — "I'll do so another time," replied Jim.

[1] = one could not eat it.

*Proverbs:* It's no good crying over spilt milk.
A **fool** laughs when others laugh.
A wise man does at first what a fool must do at last.

---

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| lose | spill | spoil |
| lost | spilt | spoilt |
| lost | spilt | spoilt |

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| beg | beggar | |
| lose | **loss** | |
| | fool | foolish |
| | dirt | dirty |

---

41. A. *Pronounce:* lazy, lap, Latin; weather, gather, together; beggar, baker; money, honey, month; lose, use, choose, whose; lost, crossed; cool, fool, full; tied, side, replied, ride.

41. B. (1) How did the old woman get her living? (2) Did Jim do much to help her? (3) What did the farmer give him on Monday? (4) Where did Jim lose it? (5) What did he do with the milk? (6) What stupid thing did he do on Thursday? (7) When does butter melt? (8) When does snow melt? (9) What did the cat do to Jim? (10) What happened to the leg of mutton? (11) What do you think of Jim? (12) Who is not pleased when you are lazy?

41. C. *Give other words for* (1) silly, (2) the whole day, (3) his name was Jim, (4) idle, (5) to cross a

brook, (6) to reply, (7) with care, (8) big, (9) nothing but a cat, (10) in a short time, (11) I am going to do it, (12) I have stopped doing it.

41. D. *Make sentences containing* (1) *the preposition* before, (2) *the conjunction* before, (3) scarcely, (4) he ought to, (5) so much, (6) as much as.

41. E. *Verbs:* (1) loss, (2) pleasure, (3) tale, (4) speech, (5) deed, (6) life, (7) joy, (8) weight.

41. F. *Nouns:* (1) shady, (2) to help, (3) easy, (4) remember, (5) angry, (6) to weigh, (7) to hasten, (8) to build, (9) misty, (10) to feel, (11) funny, (12) to freeze.

41. G. *Adverbs:* (1) easy, (2) wonderful, (3) foolish, (4) pleasant, (5) good, (6) reasonable, (7) clear, (8) sleepy.

41. H. *Tell this part of the story in your own words.*

## 42. Lazy Jim (II).

On Monday, Jim went to a **mill** and worked for the **miller,** and *he* gave him — a **donkey!** It was rather difficult for Jim to **lift** the donkey on to his shoulders; indeed he nearly failed to do it, but at last he **managed** it, and started off slowly, for the donkey was heavy.

On his way he passed the house of a **rich** man, who had a beautiful daughter; but she was deaf



LAZY JIM.

and **dumb**, and had never laughed in her life. Her father had asked many **doctors** about her, and all said: "She will neither hear nor speak till **somebody** makes her laugh." Now this poor **lady** happened to be sitting at the window just then, and as Lazy Jim went slowly by with the donkey on his shoulders, he looked so strange and so funny, that she burst out laughing; and from that moment she was able to hear and speak. Her father was so delighted that he married her to Lazy Jim, who was **thus**[1] made a rich **gentleman.** They lived in a large house, and Jim's mother lived with them in great happiness until she died.

"And now I think we ought to go home, or we shall be late for tea; I'm sure you'll all be hungry and thirsty by the time we get home," said Mr. Robinson. They returned a **different** way, and by the time they arrived, Mary and Jane had two fine **bunches** of flowers and grasses, which were **immediately** put into water.

Just two days after this, they were all on the way to the station, to meet their father. He had been very busy, and could not catch an earlier train than the 4.35 at Sunbury, which reached Sandy Bay Station at 5.22. His wife and children were there to **welcome** him, and his father and mother too; they were quite a large party. Jack was allowed to come

---

[1] thus = in this way.

too, and he barked at the porters and the **station-master,** and even at the train as soon as it appeared. He seemed to know who was coming; and when Mr. Robinson **stepped** out of the railway car, Jack jumped round him again and again.

**Everyone** was happy that Father had come; especially little Jane, who held his hand as they walked home from the station. When they reached the Red Cottage, they found that Aunt Grace had made a **cake;** and on the table were the flowers Mary and Jane had gathered. But the best thing of all was, that Father was going to stay till Monday morning.

*Proverbs*: A good name is better than **riches.**
He that never fails, never grows rich.

---

*sing.:* lady
*plur.:* ladies

step
stepped
**stepped**

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| step | **step** | |
| | riches | rich |

---

42. A. *Pronounce:* donkey, honey, penny; manage, carriage, porridge; deaf, left; come, dumb, some; go, slow, know; us, thus, as, is, was; woman, gentleman; come, welcome, cup, teacup.

42. B. (1) What did Jim do with the donkey? (2) Was it easy to do this? (3) Whose house did he pass? (4) What had the doctors said? (5) What looked funny? (6) How did Jim become a rich gentleman? (7) Was he good to his mother? (8) Did Mary and Jane pick many flowers? (9) Why did they put them into water at once? (10) Why didn't Mr. Robinson come earlier? (11) Who waited for him at the station? (12) Did Jack keep quiet at the station? (13) What had Aunt Grace made? (14) What pleased the children most of all?

42. C. *Opposites:* (1) best, (2) at first, (3) heavy, (4) poor, (5) quick, (6) lazy, (7) late, (8) easy, (9) most, (10) wise.

42. D. *Adjectives:* (1) fool, (2) shade, (3) to please, (4) dirt, (5) friend, (6) ease, (7) reason, (8) care.

42. E. *Comparative and superlative:* (1) clear, (2) thin, (3) funny, (4) good, (5) harmful, (6) easy.

42. F. *Imperfect and perfect:* (1) I drop, (2) I go, (3) I fall, (4) I see, (5) I lose, (6) I beg, (7) I choose, (8) I drink, (9) I lie, (10) I lay.

42. G. *The rich man tells us why his daughter married Lazy Jim.*

## 43. The daisy (l).

I cannot tell you all the things they did during the happy weeks at Sandy Bay. Several times a fisherman took them in his **boat** and **rowed** them quite far

away from the **shore**; and once Grandfather took them all for a **drive** to a village about twelve **miles**[1] on the road to Sunbury. How they enjoyed it!

However, here is a story that Aunt Grace told them one evening, which you may like to hear too.

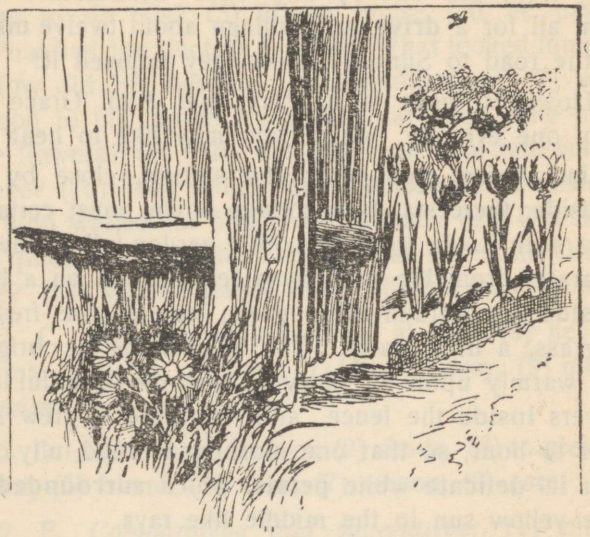
Just before you reach the station, close by the roadside, there stands a cottage — you must certainly have seen it. In front is a little garden full of flowers, separated from the road by a **fence**; and on a bank **outside** the garden there grew, among the freshest of grass, a little daisy. The sun shone as brightly and warmly upon the daisy as upon the beautiful large flowers **inside** the fence, and therefore it grew from hour to hour, so that one morning it stood fully open with its **delicate** white **petals**, which **surrounded** the little yellow sun in the middle like rays.

It never entered the little flower's head that no one saw her, **hidden** as she was among the grass; she was quite **contented**; she turned towards the warm sun, looked at it, and listened to the **lark** who was singing in the air.

The daisy was as happy as if it were the day of some great **festival**, and yet it was only Monday. The children were at school; and **whilst** they sat and learnt their lessons, the little flower upon her green **stalk** learnt from the warm sun and everything around her, how good God is. Meanwhile the little lark said

---

[1] We can walk three or four miles in an hour.



in his clear and beautiful song all that *she* felt in **silence!** — and the flower looked up with a sort of **reverence** to the happy bird, who could fly and sing; it did not **distress** her that she could not do the same. "I can see and listen," thought she; "the sun shines on me, and the wind kisses me. Oh, how fortunate I am!"

There stood on the other side of the fence several **grand, stiff**-looking flowers; the less **fragrance** they had, the more airs they gave themselves. The **peonies puffed** themselves out, so that they might be larger than the roses.

The **tulips** had the brightest colours of all; they knew it quite well and held themselves as straight as a stick, so that they might be the better seen. They took no **notice** at all of the little flower outside the fence; but she looked all the more upon them, thinking: "How rich and beautiful they are! Yes, that **noble** bird will surely fly down and visit them. How happy am I who live so near them and see their beauty!" Just at that moment the lark flew down, but he did not come to the peonies or the tulips; no, he flew down to the poor little daisy in the grass, who was nearly frightened from pure joy.

The little bird hopped about and sang, "Oh, how soft is this grass! and what a sweet little flower blooms here, with its golden heart and silver dress!" for the yellow middle of the daisy looked just like gold, and the little petals around were white as silver.

How happy the little daisy was! No one can imagine how happy. The bird kissed her with his beak, sang to her, and then flew up again into the blue sky. It was a full quarter of an hour before the flower **recovered** herself. Half **ashamed,** and yet altogether happy, she looked at the flowers in the garden; they must certainly have **noticed** the **honour** and happiness that had been **conferred** upon her, they must know how delighted she was. But the tulips held themselves twice as stiff as before, and their faces grew quite red with anger; and the peonies,

they were so thick-headed, it was indeed well that they could not speak, or the little daisy would have heard something not very pleasant. The poor little flower could well see that they were in a bad temper, and it distressed her.

Soon after, a girl came into the garden, with a sharp and bright knife; she went up to the tulips and cut off one after another. "Oh! that is terrible," **sighed** the daisy, "it is now all over with them." The girl then went away with the tulips. How glad was the daisy that she grew in the grass outside the fence, and was not a grand flower! She felt really **thankful;** and when the sun set, she **folded** her petals, went to sleep, and dreamed all night of the sun and the beautiful bird.

*Proverbs:* Speech is silver, silence is golden.
Be **silent** or say something better than silence.

---

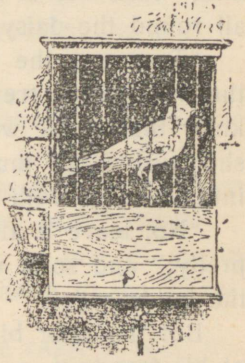
hide
hid
hidden

The older we are, the more we can do.
The less we do, the less we live.
The more a man does, the less he talks about it.

one mile = 1760 **yards**
= 320 rods
1 **rod** = 5½ yards
1 yd. = 3 feet
1 ft. = 12 **inches** (in.)

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| drive | drive | |
| surround | | round |
| | silence | silent |
| distress | **distress** | |
| | fragrance | **fragrant** |
| notice | notice | |
| thank | thanks *(plur.)* | thankful |
| **honour** | honour | **honourable** |

## 44. The daisy (II).



The next morning, when the sun rose and our little flower — fresh and **cheerful** again—opened out all her white petals in the bright **sunshine** and clear air, she heard the voice of the bird; but he sang so **mournfully. Alas!** the poor lark had good reason for **sadness;** he had been caught, and put into a **cage** close by the open window. He sang of the joys of a free **flight,** he sang of the young green corn in the fields, and of the delight of being borne up by his wings into the blue sky. The poor bird was certainly very unhappy; he sat a **prisoner** in his small cage!

The little daisy would **willingly** have helped him, but how could she? **Ah,** that she did not know. She

quite forgot how beautiful everything around her was, how warmly the sun shone, how pretty and white her petals were. Alas! she could only think of the **imprisoned** bird — for whom she was **unable** to do anything.

All at once two little boys came out into the garden; one of them had a knife in his hand, as large and sharp as that with which the girl had cut the tulips. They went up straight to the little daisy, who could not imagine what they wanted.

"Here we can cut a nice piece of grass for the lark," said one of the boys; and he began to cut deep all round the daisy, leaving her in the middle.

"Tear out the flower," said the other boy; and the little daisy **trembled** all over for **fear:** for she knew that if she were torn out she would die, and she wished so much to live, as she was to be put into the cage with the imprisoned lark.

"No, leave it alone!" said the first, "it looks so pretty;" and so it was left alone, and was put into the lark's cage.

But the poor bird loudly complained of the loss of his **freedom,** and beat his wings against the sides of his cage: and the little flower could not speak, could not say one word of comfort to him, much as she wished to do so.[1] Thus passed the whole morning.

"There's no water here!" said the imprisoned lark; "they have all gone out and forgotten me; not

[1] = though she very much wished to do so.

a drop of water to drink!" My **throat** is dry and **burning;** there's fire and ice in me, and the air is so heavy. Alas! I must die, I must leave the warm sunshine, the fresh green trees, and all the beautiful things that God has made!" And then he put his beak into the cool grass, to **refresh** himself a little — and his eye fell upon the daisy, and the bird knew her again, and said: "You too will **wither** here, you poor little flower! They have given you to me, and the piece of green around you, **instead of** the whole world which was mine before! Every little **blade** of grass shall be for me a green tree, every white petal a fragrant flower! Alas! you only **remind** me of what I have lost."

"Oh! that I could comfort him!"[1] thought the daisy, but she could not move; yet the fragrance which came from her delicate blossom was stronger than is usual with this flower; the bird noticed it; and **although, panting** with thirst, he tore the green blades from the earth, he did no harm to the flower.

It was evening, and yet no one came to bring the poor bird a drop of water; he stretched out his **slender** wings, and **shook** them several times — his song was a mournful "tweet-tweet" — his little head **bent** towards the flower, and the bird's heart broke from thirst and desire.

---

[1] = if only I could comfort him.

The flower could not now, as on the last evening, fold together her petals and sleep; she bent down **sadly** to the ground.

The boys did not come till the next morning; and when they saw the bird was dead, they wept bitterly. They dug a grave, on which they scattered flower petals; the bird's dead body was put into a pretty red box; like a king was the poor bird buried! — while he yet lived and sang they forgot him, left him **suffering** in his cage, and now he was highly honoured and bitterly regretted.

But the piece of earth with the daisy in it was thrown into the road; no one thought of her who had felt most for the little bird, and who had so much wished to comfort him.

*Proverb:* Joy and **sorrow** are as near as to-day and to-morrow.

---

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| burn | bend | shake |
| burnt | bent | shook |
| burnt | bent | shaken |

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| **cheer** | | cheerful |
| **mourn** | | mournful |
| | sadness | sad |
| | sorrow | sorry |
| fly | flight | |

| *verb* | *noun* | *adjective* |
|---|---|---|
| imprison | **prison** | |
| | prisoner | |
| **fear** | fear | afraid |
| | freedom | free |
| refresh | | fresh |
| use | | usual |

---

44. A. *Plural:* (1) foot, (2) mouse, (3) man, (4) knife, (5) ox, (6) house, (7) leaf, (8) penny, (9) potato, (10) branch, (11) cherry, (12) sheep, (13) child, (14) tooth.

44. B. *Feminine:* (1) uncle, (2) nephew, (3) father-in-law, (4) ox, (5) master, (6) gentleman.

44. C. *Comparative and superlative:* (1) much, (2) little, (3) good, (4) bad, (5) early, (6) late, (7) thin, (8) big, (9) old, (10) hot, (11) long.

44. D. *Imperfect and past participle:* (1) bend, (2) beat, (3) shake, (4) hide, (5) shine, (6) travel, (7) beg, (8) strike, (9) hop, (10) lead, (11) wear, (12) hang, (13) weep, (14) forget, (15) regret, (16) break, (17) fulfil, (18) bear, (19) send, (20) build, (21) slip, (22) set, (23) ride, (24) speed, (25) throw, (26) read, (27) meet, (28) feel, (29) grow, (30) sing, (31) fly, (32) cling, (33) mean, (34) begin, (35) fight, (36) sweep, (37) lie, (38) creep, (39) quarrel, (40) sleep, (41) dig, (42) stand, (43) rise, (44) stop, (45) eat, (46) wet, (47) put, (48) find, (49) try, (50) let, (51) hold, (52) buy, (53) sell, (54) keep, (55) pay, (56) get, (57) cost, (58) choose, (59) speak, (60) tear, (61) think, (62) blow,

(63) come, (64) cut, (65) hear, (66) make, (67) tell, (68) fall, (69) fell, (70) sit, (71) bite, (72) draw, (73) freeze, (74) awake, (75) give, (76) say, (77) go, (78) leave, (79) drive, (80) know, (81) take, (82) drink, (83) bring, (84) catch, (85) see, (86) run, (87) open, (88) do, (89) lay.

44. E. *Nouns:* (1) sad, (2) to fly, (3) free, (4) fragrant, (5) silent, (6) rich, (7) to lose, (8) to please, (9) to help, (10) to remember, (11) to weigh, (12) to add, (13) to build, (14) to feel, (15) to begin, (16) to dine, (17) to sit, (18) to live, (19) to speak, (20) wise, (21) to marry, (22) to tell, (23) to sing, (24) to do, (25) happy, (26) hot.

44. F. *Adjectives:* (1) to use, (2) to cheer, (3) to mourn, (4) to thank, (5) fool, (6) dirt, (7) to please, (8) shade, (9) friend, (10) ease, (11) wealth, (12) reason, (13) anger, (14) to cost, (15) to care, (16) industry, (17) to wonder, (18) mist, (19) to sleep, (20) to quarrel, (21) storm, (22) fortune, (23) heart, (24) health, (25) trouble, (26) to delight, (27) to hope, (28) gold, (29) to live, (30) to respect, (31) might, (32) comfort, (33) bush, (34) hunger, (35) thirst, (36) wool, (37) wood, (38) dust, (39) beauty, (40) to die, (41) to love.

44. G. *Verbs:* (1) prison, (2) fresh, (3) round, (4) joy, (5) full, (6) fast, (7) ripe, (8) awake, (9) flight, (10) loss, (11) pleasant, (12) weight, (13) haste, (14) frost, (15) sight, (16) seat, (17) speech, (18) life, (19) tale, (20) food, (21) deed, (22) song, (23) dead, (24) ripe, (25) dinner.

44. H. *Opposites:* (1) alone, (2) fear, (3) able, (4) sad, (5) open, (6) silence, (7) inside, (8) rich, (9) foolish, (10) lazy, (11) enter, (12) merry, (13) ill, (14) difficult, (15) idle, (16) forget, (17) weep, (18) in front, (19) bitter, (20) misfortune, (21) noise, (22) present, (23) industrious, (24) clever, (25) late, (26) to lock, (27) to dress, (28) upstairs, (29) everybody, (30) comfortable, (31) beginning, (32) nowhere, (33) stormy weather, (34) begin, (35) possible, (36) to rise, (37) high, (38) to finish, (39) downstairs, (40) fast, (41) bright, (42) to dry, (43) loud, (44) empty, (45) hard, (46) a few, (47) to receive, (48) to buy, (49) far, (50) remember, (51) arrive, (52) quiet, (53) busy, (54) nothing, (55) alive, (56) wrong, (57) wise, (58) mighty, (59) interesting, (60) indoors, (61) poor, (62) easy, (63) deep, (64) full, (65) plenty, (66) fine weather, (67) never, (68) quickly, (69) no one, (70) sweet, (71) early, (72) lower, (73) I can, (74) happy, (75) thick, (76) fair, (77) well, (78) clean, (79) to die, (80) cold, (81) weak, (82) wet, (83) before, (84) great, (85) warm, (86) always, (87) long, (88) young, (89) often.

44. I. *Other words for:* (1) I am able, (2) mournful, (3) amid, (4) rid, (5) immediately, (6) foolish, (7) lazy, (8) sunbeam, (9) cross, (10) to go in, (11) a short while, (12) merry, (13) a good deal, (14) idle, (15) the rest, (16) desire, (17) to weep, (18) to utter (words), (19) to go by, (20) I used to do it, (21) talk, (22) to close, (23) folks, (24) afeard, (25) to cast, (26) peep of day, (27) damp, (28) appetite, (29) to finish, (30) hardly

any, (31) fast, (32) handsome, (33) reply, (34) the whole day, (35) tale, (36) indoors, (37) to exclaim, (38) to wish, (39) a lot, (40) plenty, (41) hunger, (42) quickly, (43) to be fond of, (44) unable to see, (45) unable to hear, (46) unable to speak, (47) fair, (48) a dozen, (49) his name is Tom, (50) big.

44. J. *(a)* $73 \times 4 =$ , *(b)* $1217 - 96 =$ , *(c)* $349 + 506 =$ , *(d)* $1 \times 7 = 7$, $2 \times 7 =$ , etc., *(e)* $10 + 3 =$ , $30 + 3 =$ , etc.

44. K. *(a)* 3 : vii (= the third of July), *(b)* 12 : iv, *(c)* 29 : v, *(d)* 11 : xii, *(e)* 8 : i, *(f)* 16 : ix, *(g)* 31 : iii, *(h)* 22 : x, *(i)* 5 : ii, *(j)* 14 : xi, *(k)* 27 : vi, *(l)* 1 : viii.

44. L. *(a)* 1.30 a.m., *(b)* 10 p.m., *(c)* 4.15 p.m., *(d)* 11.45 a.m., *(e)* 2.40 a.m., *(f)* 6.55 p.m.

44. M. *Make lists of:* (1) The colours. (2) The four-legged animals. (3) The birds. (4) The trees and flowers. (5) The parts of the body. (6) The parts of a house. (7) What you see in the schoolroom. (8) What you see in a village. (9) What you see in fields and woods. (10) What you see on the beach. (11) American and English coins. (12) Relations. (13) Verbs which mean „to move in some way" (to walk, etc.). (14) Verbs and adjectives which show feelings (to please, glad, etc.). (15) Words of weather (rain, etc.) and time (hour, etc.).

# APPENDIX I

## PLACE NAMES, ETC.

| *Country* | *Capital* | *Inhabitant* | *Adjective* |
|---|---|---|---|
| British Empire *or* British Commonwealth of Nations | London | Briton | British |
| England | London | Englishman | English |
| Scotland | Edinburgh | Scotchman, Scot | Scotch, Scottish |
| Ireland | Dublin | Irishman | Irish |
| Wales | Cardiff | Welshman | Welsh |
| Canada | Ottawa | Canadian | Canadian |
| New-Foundland | St. John's | Newfoundlander | Newfoundland |
| India | Delhi | Indian | Indian |
| Australia | Canberra | Australian | Australian |
| New Zealand | Wellington | New Zealander | New Zealand |
| South Africa | Cape Town | South African | South African |
| United States of America | Washington | American | American |
| Argentine | Buenos Ayres | Argentine | Argentine |
| Austria | Vienna | Austrian | Austrian |
| Brazil | Rio de Janeiro | Brazilian | Brazilian |
| Chile | Santiago | Chilian | Chilian |
| China | Pekin | Chinese | Chinese |
| Denmark | Copenhagen | Dane | Danish |
| Estonia | Tallinn | Estonian | Estonian |
| France | Paris | Frenchman | French |
| Germany | Berlin | German | German |
| Greece | Athens | Greek | Greek |
| Holland | The Hague | Dutchman | Dutch |
| Hungary | Budapest | Hungarian | Hungarian |
| Italy | Rome | Italian | Italian |
| Japan | Tokio | Japanese | Japanese |
| Norway | Oslo | Norwegian | Norwegian |
| Portugal | Lisbon | Portuguese | Portuguese |
| Russia | Moscow | Russian | Russian |
| Spain | Madrid | Spaniard | Spanish |
| Sweden | Stockholm | Swede | Swedish |
| Switzerland | Berne | Swiss | Swiss |

# APPENDIX II

## ABBREVIATIONS

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ald. | Alderman | J.P. | Justice of the Peace |
| a.m. | before noon | Jr. | Junior |
| B.A. | Bachelor of Arts | K.C. | King's Counsel |
| bl. | barrel | lb. | pound (weight) |
| B.Sc. | Bachelor of Science | M.A. | Master of Arts |
| bu. | bushel | M.D. | Doctor of Medicine |
| c. | cent | M.P. | Member of Parliament |
| C.E. | Civil Engineer | M.P.P. | Member of Provincial Parliament |
| cf. | compare | | |
| c/o | care of | N.B. | note |
| C.O.D. | collect on delivery | No. | number |
| Co. | Company | oz. | ounce |
| cp. | compare | p.m. | after noon |
| cwt. | hundredweight | P.O. | Post Office |
| d. | penny | Prof. | Professor |
| do. | ditto (the same) | prox. | of next month |
| doz. | dozen | P.S. | Postscript |
| Dr. | Doctor | pt. | pint |
| e.g. | for example | P.T.O. | please turn over |
| Esq. | Esquire | qt. | quart |
| etc. | et cetera (and so on) | Rev. | Reverend |
| ft. | foot | R.S.V.P. | please answer |
| gal. | gallon | s. | shilling |
| Hon. | Honourable | Sr. | Senior |
| hr. | hour | ult. | of last month |
| i.e. | that is | viz. | namely |
| in. | inch | yd. | yard |
| inst. | of this month | $ | dollar |
| I.O.U. | I owe you | £ | pound (money) |

## ANSWERS TO THE RIDDLES ON PP. 115, 116, 117.

1. In the days of Noah (no *a*), before you (*u*) and I (*i*) were born. 2. The letter *a,* because it makes *her hear.* 3. The letter *m.* 4. Because it is in the middle of *day.* 5. By taking away the *t;* for it is *eatable* then. 6. The letter *c* (the *sea*). 7. Because it is in the middle of *water.* 8. Sunday; all the others are week-days (weak days). 9. The word *short* becomes *shorter* by the addition of a syllable. 10. When it looks round. 11. Because the bed will not come to us. 12. Its father's daughter. 13. A good appetite. 14. A hole. 15. My name. 16. The winds blew (blue) and the waves rose. 17. The fire. 18. Mice. 19. Growing older. 20. Three geese, one behind the other. 21. To-day.

# PHONETIC SECTION.

(KEY TO THE PRONUNCIATION PAGE 197—209.)

ˈneimz fə ˈbɔiz:

ˈædəm, ˈælbət, æliˈgzɑ:ndə*, ˈælfrid, ˈælən, ˈændru:, ˈɑ:tʃibɔ:ld, ˈɑ:θə*, ˈbæzl, ˈsesl, tʃɑ:lz, ˈkristəfə*, ˈdænjəl, ˈdeivid, ˈedgə*, ˈedmənd, ˈedwəd, ˈedwin, ˈə:nist, ˈfrɑ:nsis, fræŋk, ˈfredrik, dʒɔ:dʒ, ˈdʒerəld, gai, ˈhærəld, ˈhektə*, ˈhenri, ˈhə:bət, ˈhɔris, ˈhju:bət, hju:, dʒeimz, dʒɔn, ˈdʒouzif, ˈdʒu:ljəs, ˈlenəd, ˈlaiənl, ˈmɑ:tin, ˈmæθju:, ˈmaikl, ˈɔlivə*, pɔ:l, ˈpə:si, ˈpi:tə*, ˈfilip, reif (ɔ rælf), ˈrændɔlf, ˈredʒinəld, ˈritʃəd, ˈrɔbət, ˈrɔbin, ˈrouləndˌ ˈsæmjuəl, ˈsidni, ˈsti:vn, ˈtɔməs, ˈwɔ:ltə*, ˈwiljəm.

ˈneimz fə ˈgə:lz:

ˈeidə, ˈægnis, ˈælis, æn, ˈbiətris, ˈbə:θə, ˈberil, blɑ:nʃ, kəˈmilə, ˈkærəlain, ˈkæθrin, seˈsiljə, ˈʃɑ:lət, ˈkɔnstəns, ˈdɔrəθi, ˈi:diθ, ˈaili:n, eˈlizəbəθ, ˈelən, ˈelsi, ˈemili, ˈi:nid, ˈeθl, ˈi:və, ˈi:vlin, feiθ, ˈflɔrəns, ˈfrɑ:nsis, ˈgə:tru:d, ˈglædis, greis, ˈgwendəlin, ˈhelən, ˈhildə, houp, ˈaidə, ˈaiəris, ˈizəbel, dʒein, ˈdʒeni, ˈdʒesikə, ˈli:lə, ˈlili, luˈi:zə, ˈlu:si, ˈmeibl, ˈmɑ:grit, ˈmɛəriən, ˈmɛəri, mɔ:d, mei, ˈmildrid, ˈmini, ˈmjuəriəl, ˈnɔ:rə, ˈɔliv, ˈfilis, ˈroudə, rouz, ˈru:bi, ru:θ, ˈsɛərə, soˈfaiə, ˈstelə, ˈsibl, ˈsilvjə, vikˈtɔ:riə, ˈvaiəlit, ˈwinifrid.

ˈfæmili ˈneimz:

ˈædmsən, ˈbeikə*, ˈbɑ:bə*, blæk, braun, ˈbutʃə*, ˈbʌtlə*, ˈkɑ:pntə*, ˈkɑ:tə*, ˈtʃɑ:ndlə*, ˈkʌnstəbl, kuk, ˈkʌtlə*, ˈdeividsən, ˈdreipə*, ˈfaulə*, ˈfulə*, ˈgɑ:dnə*, ˈglʌvə*, gri:n, grei, ˈhʌntə*, ˈdʒeimsən, ˈdʒɔnsən, ˈmeisn, ˈmilə*, ˈpeintə*, ˈpi:təsn, ˈritʃədsən, ˈrɔbətsən, ˈrɔbinsən, ˈʃepəd, ˈskinə*, smiθ, ˈspaisə*, ˈsti:vənsən, ˈteilə*, ˈtænə*, ˈtɔmsən, ˈtə:nə*, ˈwɔ:kə*, ˈwi:və*, (h)wait, ˈwiljəmsən.



**1.** wʌn; ˈfəːst ˈlesn.

tɔm ˈhenri ˈmɛəri dʒein
ə ˈbɔi ə ˈbɔi ə ˈgəːl ə ˈgəːl.
ˈtɔm iz ə ˈbɔi. ˈmɛəri iz ə ˈgəːl.
ˈˈhuː iz ə ˈbɔi? ˈˈtɔm iz ə ˈbɔi.
ˈˈwɔt iz ˈtɔm? ˈtɔm iz ə ˈˈbɔi.
hi (hiː+) iz ə ˈˈbɔi.
ˈˈwɔt iz ˈmɛəri? ˈmɛəri iz ə ˈˈgəːl.
ʃi (ʃiː+) iz ə ˈˈgəːl.
ˈwɔt ɑː ˈˈjuː, ˈtɔm? ai əm[1] (æm+) ə ˈbɔi.
ˈtɔm ənd (ænd+) ˈhenri ɑː ˈbɔiz.
ˈˈwɔt ɑː juː, ˈtɔm ənd ˈhenri? wi (wiː+) ə (ɑː+) ˈˈbɔiz.
ˈmɛəri ən(d)ˈdʒein ə ˈgəːlz. ðei ə ˈgəːlz.
ˈˈhuː ə ˈgəːlz? ˈˈmɛəri ən ˈˈdʒein ə ˈgəːlz.
ə ˈbɔi, ə ˈmæn; ə ˈgəːl, ə ˈwumən.
ðə ˈmæn iz ðə ˈfɑːðə. ðə ˈwumən iz ðə ˈmʌðə.
ðə ˈfɑːðər iz ə ˈmæn. ðə ˈmʌðər iz ə ˈwumən.

**1. B.** (1) ˈˈwɔt iz ˈmɛəri? (2) ˈˈhuː iz ə ˈgəːl? (3) ˈˈhuː ə ˈgəːlz? (4) ˈˈhuː iz ə ˈbɔi? (5) ˈˈhuː ə ˈbɔiz? (6) ˈˈhuː iz ə ˈwumən? (7) ˈˈwɔt iz ðə ˈfɑːðə? (8) ˈˈhuː iz ə ˈmæn? (9) ˈˈwɔt iz ˈhenri? (10) ˈˈwɔt ɑː ˈjuː, ˈmɛəri ən ˈdʒein?

---

+ ðiːz ɑː ðə strɔŋ fɔːmz.

[1] ɔːr aim.

**1. C.** (1) ˈtɔm iz — —. (2) ðə ˈfɑ:ðər iz — —. (3) ˈtɔm ənd ˈhenri ɑ:—. (4) aim — —. (5) wi ɑ:—. (6) ðə ˈmʌðər iz — —. (7) ju ɑ:r — —. (8) ˈdʒein iz — —.

**1. D.** (1) — — ə ˈbɔi. (2) — — — ə ˈwumən. (3) — ən(d) — — ˈgə:lz. (4) — əm — —. (5) —ənd — — ˈbɔiz. (6) — — — ə ˈmæn.

## 2. tu:; ˈseknd ˈlesn.

ˈhenri hæz ə ˈfɑ:ðə. ˈhæv ju ə ˈfɑ:ðə, ˈhenri? ˈjes, ai ˈˈhæv ə ˈfɑ:ðə. ˈmɛəri ən ˈdʒein, ˈhæv ju ə ˈmʌðə? ˈjes, wi ˈˈhæv ə ˈmʌðə.

hæv ðə ˈfɑ:ðər ənd ˈmʌðə ˈˈwʌn ˈsʌn? ˈnou, ðei hæv ˈˈtu: ˈsʌnz. ðə ˈfə:st ˈsʌn iz ˈˈtɔm, ðə ˈseknd iz ˈˈhenri.

ðei hæv ˈtu: ˈdɔ:təz. ˈˈhu: ɑ: ðə ˈdɔ:təz? ˈmɛəri iz ðə ˈˈfə:st ˈdɔ:tə, ən ˈdʒein iz ðə ˈˈseknd. iz ˈmɛəri ə ˈˈsʌn ɔr (ɔ:*+) ə ˈˈdɔ:tə? ʃi iz ə ˈˈdɔ:tə, ʃi iz ˈˈnɔt ə ˈsʌn. ʃi iz ə ˈˈtʃaild; ˈtɔm iz ə ˈtʃaild ˈˈtu:. ðə ˈfɑ:ðər iz ə ˈˈmæn, hi iz ˈˈnɔt ə ˈtʃaild.

**2. B.** (1) ˈˈhu: hæv ˈtu: ˈsʌnz? (2) hæv ðei ˈdɔ:təz ˈˈtu:? ˈˈhu: iz (3) ðə ˈfə:st ˈsʌn? (4) ðə ˈseknd ˈdɔ:tə? (5) ˈwɔt iz ˈmɛəri? (6) ˈhu: iz ˈˈnot ə ˈtʃaild? (7) ˈhu: iz ˈˈnɔt ə ˈwumən? (8) ˈhu: iz ˈˈnɔt ə ˈdɔ:tə? (9) iz ðə ˈmʌðər ə ˈˈtʃaild? (10) ˈhæz ðə ˈmʌðər ə ˈtʃaild? (11) iz ˈhenri ə ˈˈsʌn ɔr ə ˈˈdɔ:tə? (12) iz ðə ˈmʌðər ə ˈˈmæn ɔr ə ˈˈwumən?

---

+ strɔŋ fɔ:m.

**2. C.** (1) ðə ˈmʌðə hæz ˈtu: — ən ˈtu: —. (2) ˈhenri iz — —. (3) ˈtɔm iz ˈˈnɔt — —; hi iz — —. (4) ˈdʒein iz ˈˈnɔt — —; ʃi iz — —. (5) ˈmɛəri ən ˈdʒein ɑ: —. (6) ˈdʒein hæz — —; ʃi hæz — — ˈˈtu:.

**3.** θri:; ˈθə:d ˈlesn.

ðə ˈfɑ:ðə hæz ˈtʃildrən. hæz hi ˈˈθri: ˈsʌnz? ˈnou, hi hæz ˈˈtu: ˈsʌnz. ˈtɔm ənd ˈhenri ɑ: hiz ˈsʌnz. ðə ˈgə:lz ɑ: hiz ˈdɔ:təz. ðə ˈtʃildrən hæv ə ˈmʌðə ˈˈtu:; ðei ɑ: hə (hə:⁺) ˈtʃildrən. ðə ˈgə:lz ə ˈˈnɔt hə ˈˈsʌnz. ˈˈhu: ɑ: hə ˈsʌnz?

ðə ˈfɑ:ðə hæz ə ˈˈhaus. hæz ðə ˈfɑ:ðə ˈˈtu: ˈhauziz? ˈnou, hi hæz ˈˈwʌn ˈhaus. ˈhi: ənd ðə ˈmʌðər ənd ðə ˈtʃildrən ˈliv in hiz ˈhaus.

ðə ˈfɑ:ðər iz ˈˈbig, bət (bʌt⁺) ˈhenri iz ˈˈsmɔ:l.

iz ðə ˈhaus ˈˈveri ˈbig? nou, it iz ˈˈnɔt; it iz ˈnɔt ə ˈˈbig ˈhaus, bət ə ˈˈsmɔ:l ˈhaus.

d(u) (du:⁺) ˈˈju: ˈliv in ðə ˈhaus, ˈhenri? ˈjes, ai ˈdu:.

ənd ˈˈwɛə du ˈˈju: liv, ˈdʒein? ai ˈliv in ðə ˈhaus ˈˈtu:. wi ˈˈɔ:l ˈliv ðɛə. dəz (dʌz⁺) ˈtɔm liv ðɛə ˈˈtu:? ˈjes, hi ˈdʌz.

**3. B.** ðə ˈfɑ:ðə hæz ˈtʃildrən. (1) ˈhu: ə hiz ˈˈsʌnz? (2) ˈhu: ə hiz ˈˈdɔ:təz? (3) ˈwɛə du ðei ˈliv? (4) dəz ðə ˈmʌðə liv ðɛə ˈˈtu:? (5) iz hiz ˈhaus ˈveri ˈsmɔ:l? (6) iz ðə ˈfɑ:ðə ˈsmɔ:l? (7) ˈˈhu: ˈlivz in ðə ˈhaus? (8) ɑ:r ˈˈɔ:l hauziz ˈsmɔ:l? (9) hæz ðə ˈmʌðə ˈˈθri: ˈdɔ:təz? (10) ˈˈhu: ɑ: hə ˈdɔ:təz? (11) ˈˈwɛər iz ə ˈbɔi? (12) iz

⁺ strɔŋ fɔ:m.

ˈhenri ˈbig ɔ ˈsmɔ:l? (13) iz ˈdʒein in ðə ˈhaus? (14) ɑ:r ˈɔ:l ðə ˈtʃildrən ˈðɛə? (15) ˈwɛər ɑ: ˈtu: ˈgə:lz?

**3. C.** (1) wi ˈliv in — —. (2) ðə ˈmʌðər iz — —, bət ˈdʒein — — —. (3) ˈtɔm ənd ˈmɛəri ɑ: —. (4) ðə ˈbɔiz ɑ: ˈnɔt —. (5) ðə ˈfɑ:ðə hæz —. (6) hiz ˈtʃildrən ˈliv — — —. (7) ˈhenri iz ˈnɔt — —, bət — —. (8) hi hæz — —.

## 4. fɔ:; ˈfɔ:θ ˈlesn.

ˈtwais ˈtu: ɑ: ˈfɔ: (2 × 2 = 4).

ˈhau meni ˈtʃildrən hæz ðə ˈfɑ:ðə? hi hæz ˈfɔ:. ˈnɔt ˈɔ:l hiz ˈtʃildrən ɑ: ˈsʌnz. ˈhau meni ˈsʌnz hæz hi? ˈhau meni ˈhauziz hæz hi? hi hæz ˈounli ˈwʌn.

ðə ˈpɛərənts (ˈfɑ:ðər ənd ˈmʌðə) ˈlʌv ðɛə ˈtʃildrən, ənd ˈðei ˈlʌv ðɛə ˈpɛərənts. ðə ˈpɛərənts ˈwə:k fə (fɔ:⁺) ðɛə ˈtʃildrən. ˈhenri ən ˈdʒein du ˈnɔt ˈwə:k; ðei ˈplei in ðə ˈhaus ɔr in ðə ˈgɑ:dn. ðə ˈgɑ:dn iz ˈnɔt ˈveri ˈbig.

d(u) ju ˈsi: ðə ˈpɛərənts? ðei ə ˈwə:kiŋ ˈnau; ðə ˈtʃildrən ə ˈpleiiŋ. ˈhu:m du ju ˈsi:? wi ˈsi: ðə ˈpɛərənts ənd ðə ˈtʃildrən.

ˈwɔt ə ju ˈduiŋ, ˈtɔm? ai əm ˈpleiiŋ wið ˈmɛəri. wið ˈhu:m iz hi ˈpleiiŋ?

“ɑ: ˈju: ˈpleiiŋ, ˈbɔiz (ˈgə:lz)?” ˈnou, wi ə ˈwə:kiŋ. “ɑ: ju ˈwə:kiŋ in ə ˈgɑ:dn?” ˈnou, wi ə ˈlə:niŋ. “ˈwɔt ə ju ˈlə:niŋ, ˈmɑ:grit (ˈwiljəm)?” ai əm ˈlə:niŋ ˈiŋgliʃ. ”ˈwɔt iz ʃi (hi) ˈlə:niŋ? ˈwɔt ə ju ˈɔ:l lə:niŋ?” wi ər ˈɔ:l ˈlə:niŋ ˈiŋgliʃ.

---

⁺ strɔŋ fɔ:m.

"ˈwɔt ˈbɔiz ənd ˈgəːlz du wi ˈsiː in ðə ˈpiktʃə?" wi ˈsiː ˈˌiŋgliʃ ˈbɔiz ənd ˈgəːlz. ˈtɔm iz ən ˈˌiŋgliʃ ˈbɔi. ˈmɛəri ən ˈdʒein ɑːr ˈˌiŋgliʃ ˈgəːlz. "ˈwɛə du ðei ˈliv?" ðei ˈliv in ˈiŋgləndˌ

**4. B.** (1) ˈˌwɔt iz ˈtɔm ˈduiŋ? (2) wið ˈˌhuːm iz ˈmɛəri ˈpleiiŋ? (3) ˈˌwɛər iz ʃi ˈpleiiŋ? (4) iz ðə ˈfɑːðə ˈˌwəːkiŋ ɔ ˈˌpleiiŋ? (5) ˈˌhau meni ˈdɔːtəz hæz ðə ˈmʌðə? (6) du ju ˈsiː ðə ˈpiktʃə? (7) dəz ˈtɔm ˈlʌv hiz ˈfɑːðə? (8) ˈhuː iz ˈˌnɔt ˈpleiiŋ? (9) ˈhuː iz ˈləːniŋ? (10) ˈˌwɛə du ˈtɔm ənd ˈhenri ˈliv? (11) ˈwɛə du ˈˌiŋgliʃ ˈtʃildrən ˈliv? (12) iz ˈhenri ən ˈˌiŋgliʃ ˈbɔi? (13) ˈˌhuː iz in ðə ˈgɑːdn? (14) ˈhuː hæz ˈounli ˈˌwʌn ˈhaus? (15) ɑːr ˈˌɔːl ðə ˈtʃildrən ˈsʌnz? (16) fɔ ˈˌhuːm du ðə ˈpɛərənts ˈwəːk? (17) wið ˈˌhuːm iz ˈmɛəri ˈpleiiŋ? (18) ˈˌwɔt ɑː ju ˈduiŋ? (19) ˈˌwɛə du ju ˈliv? (20) ˈˌwɔt iz ˈtwais ˈtuː? (21) ˈˌwɛər ɑː ðə ˈpɛərənts? (22) ˈhuː dəz ˈˌnɔt ˈliv in ˈiŋgləndˌ

**4. C.** igˈzɑːmpl — ˈsiŋgjulə: ðə ˈbɔi ˈpleiz in ə ˈgɑːdn. ˈpluərəl: ðə ˈbɔiz ˈplei in ˈgɑːdnz.

(1) ðə ˈtʃaild ˈlivz in ə ˈhaus. (2) ðə ˈsʌn hæz ə ˈmʌðə. (3) ai ˈsiː ən ˈˌiŋgliʃ ˈbɔi. (4) hi ˈlivz in ˈˌiŋgləndˌ (5) hi ˈwəːks ən ˈpleiz ðɛə. (6) ʃi hæz ə ˈsʌn. (7) aim ˈwəːkiŋ in ə ˈgɑːdn. (8) hi ˈlʌvz hiz ˈtʃaild. (9) ʃi ˈwəːks wið hə ˈdɔːtə. (10) hi iz ˈpleiiŋ wið hiz ˈsʌn.

**5.** faivˌ ˈfifθ ˈlesn.

ˈwɔt iz ˈtuː ˈplʌs ˈθriː (2+3)?

hæz ðə ˈfɑːðər ə ˈˌfifθ ˈtʃaild? ˈnou, hi hæz ˈounli ˈˌfɔː ˈtʃildrən. ˈhuː iz hiz ˈˌfɔːθ ˈtʃaild?

ˈhau meni ˈhauziz ˈɑ: ðɛər in ðə ˈpiktʃə? ðɛər iz[1] ˈounli ˈˈwʌn ˈhaus. ˈhau meni ˈtʃildrən ˈɑ: ðɛə? ðɛər ə ˈfɔ:.

ˈhenri ˈsez: "ˈðis iz mai ˈfɑ:ðə; ənd hi iz ˈˈjɔ: ˈfɑ:ðə ˈˈtu:, ˈmɛəri. ðɛəz ə ˈbɔi in ðə ˈgɑ:dn; ˈðæt ˈbɔi iz mai ˈbrʌðə ˈtɔm. mai ˈpɛərənts ə ˈgud tu ˈmi:; ðei ə ˈgud tə (tu:[+]) ˈju: ˈˈtu:, ˈɑ:nt ðei, ˈdʒein?"

"ˈjes, ˈhenri, auə ˈpɛərənts ə ˈveri ˈgud tu ˈˈɔ:l əv (ɔv[+]) əs (ʌs[+]), ənd ˈsou wi ˈlʌv ðəm ˈveri ˈmʌtʃ, ˈˈdount wi?"

"ˈjes, wi ˈˈdu:."

ˈˈwɔt iz ˈmɛəriz ˈmʌðə ˈduiŋ? ʃiz ˈwə:kiŋ in ðə ˈgɑ:dn. du ju ˈsi: hə? ˈˈhu: iz ˈwið hə?

du ju ˈsi: ˈhenriz ˈdɔg ˈdʒæk? ˈhenri dʌznt ˈsi: him; ˈsou hi ˈɑ:sks hiz ˈsistə ˈdʒein ðis ˈkwestʃən: "ˈwɛəz mai ˈdɔg? d(u) ju ˈsi: him?"

ˈdʒein ˈɑ:nsəz:"ˈjes, ˈhenri, jɔ: ˈdɔg z in ðə ˈˈgɑ:dn, ðɛə, biˈhaind ðə ˈtri:." ˈðæt iz hər ˈɑ:nsə tu hiz ˈkwestʃən.

**5. B.** (1) ˈˈhu: ˈlʌvz hiz ˈpɛərənts ˈveri ˈmʌtʃ? (2) ˈˈwɛər iz ˈtɔmz ˈmʌðə? (3) wið ˈhu:m iz ˈtɔm ˈpleiiŋ? (4) ˈˈhu: iz biˈhaind ðə ˈtri:? (5) ˈˈhu: ˈsi:z him? (6) ˈhu: dəz ˈˈnɔt? (7) ˈˈhu: ˈɑ:nsəz ˈhenriz ˈkwestʃən? (8) ˈˈhu: iz ˈveri ˈgud tə ˈdʒein? (9) ˈˈhu: ˈlʌvz hə ˈveri ˈmʌtʃ? (10) dʌz ʃi ˈlʌv ˈounli ˈˈwʌn əv hə ˈtʃildrən? (11) ˈˈwɛər ə jɔ: ˈpɛərənts, ˈmɛəri ən ˈdʒein? (12) wið ˈˈhu:m du ju ˈplei? (13) ˈˈhu: ˈwə:ks fɔ ju? (14) ˈˈhau meni ˈdɔgz du ju ˈsi: in ðə ˈpiktʃə? (15) ˈˈwɛər iz ðis ˈdɔg? (16) iz ðɛər ə ˈˈmæn in ðə ˈgɑ:dn? (17) ˈˈhu: iz

[1] ɔ: ðɛəz.

[+] strɔŋ fə:m.

ðis ˈmæn? (18) ˈhu: ɑ: hiz ˈdɔ:təz? (19) tu ˈhu:m iz hi ˈgud? (20) ˈhu: ɑ:sks ə ˈkwestʃən? (21) ˈwɔt iz ðə ˈkwestʃən? (22) ˈwɔt iz ˈdʒeinz ˈɑ:nsə?

**5. C.** igˈzɑ:mpl — wið ˈnaunz: ðə ˈmæn ˈsi:z ðə ˈdɔg. wið ˈprounaunz: hi ˈsi:z him.

(1) ðə ˈfɑ:ðə ˈlʌvz his ˈtʃildrən. (2) ðə ˈmʌðər iz ˈwə:kiŋ in ðə ˈgɑ:dn. (3) ˈdʒein iz ˈpleiiŋ wið ˈmɛəri. (4) ðə ˈbɔi ˈsi:z ðə ˈtri:z. (5) ðə ˈtri: iz ˈnɔt biˈhaind ðə ˈhaus.

**5. D.** (1) ˈdʒein ˈsez: ai ˈlʌv — ˈpɛərənts, — ˈbrʌðəz ənd — ˈsistə; ai ˈlʌv — ˈɔ:l, ənd — ˈlʌv —.

(2) ˈdʒein ənd ˈmɛəri ˈsei: — ˈlʌv — ˈbrʌðəz, ənd — ˈlʌv —.

**6.** siks; ˈsiksθ ˈlesn.

ˈwɔt ə ˈtwais ˈθri:?

ðə ˈpɛərənts ən(d) ˈtʃildrən ɑ:r ə ˈfæmili. ˈhau meni ˈɑ: ðɛər in ˈðis ˈfæmili? ðɛər ə ˈsiks; it iz ə ˈfæmili əv ˈsiks.

iz ˈdʒæk ə ˈbɔi? ˈnou, hi iz ə ˈdɔg. hi iz ˈnɔt ə ˈveri ˈbig ˈdɔg. ə ˈdɔg hæz ˈfɔ: ˈlegz; ə ˈbɔi hæz ˈtu: ˈlegz ən ˈtu: ˈɑ:mz. wi ˈwɔ:k wið auə ˈlegz; ðə ˈdɔg ˈwɔ:ks wið ˈhiz.

ˈwɛər iz ˈdʒæk? hi iz ˈlaiiŋ ɔn ðə ˈgrɑ:s biˈhaind ðæt ˈtri:. hi ˈɔ(:)fn ˈlaiz ˈðɛə. ənd ˈwɛər iz ðə ˈtri? it iz in ðə ˈgɑ:dn. bət ˈwɛər iz ðə ˈgɑ:dn? ðə ˈgɑ:dn iz bai ðə ˈfɑ:ðəz ˈhaus. ðə ˈfɑ:ðər iz ˈstændiŋ ɔn ðə ˈgrɑ:s.

ˈwɔt iz ˈdʒæk ˈduiŋ? hi iz ˈi:tiŋ. ˈwɔt dəz ə ˈdɔg ˈi:t? hi ˈi:ts ˈbiskits; ðei ə hiz ˈfu:d. ˈwɔt iz ˈðis ˈdɔg

ˈi:tiŋ? hi iz ˈi:tiŋ ə ˈbiskit. ˈhu: ˈgivz him ˈfu:d? ˈhenri dʌz ˈðæt, biˈkɔ:z ˈdʒæk iz hiz ˈdɔg. ˈwɛər iz ðɛə ˈfu:d? ðɛəz ˈfu:d in ðə ˈhaus.

**6. B.** (1) ˈhau meni ˈlegz hæz ə ˈmæn? (2) iz ðə ˈfɑ:ðə ˈlaiiŋ ɔn ðə ˈgrɑ:s? (3) ˈhau meni ˈtʃildrən ɑ: ðɛər in ðis ˈfæmili? (4) ˈhu: ˈgivz ju ˈfu:d? (5) ˈwɛə du ju ˈplei ˈveri ˈɔ(:)fn? (6) ˈwɔt dəz ə ˈdɔg ˈi:t? (7) ˈwɔt du ˈju: ˈɔ(:)fn ˈi:t? (8) ˈhau meni ˈɑ:mz hæz ə ˈbɔi? (9) ˈwɔt du wi ˈwɔ:k wið (=wið ˈwɔt du wi ˈwɔ:k?)? (10) ˈwɛər iz ðɛər ə ˈbig ˈtri:? (11) ˈhau meni ɑ: ðɛər in ˈjɔ: ˈfæmili? (12) iz it ə ˈsmɔ:l ˈfæmili? (13) iz ˈdʒein ə ˈgud ˈdɔ:tə? (14) ˈwɔt ɑ: ˈtwais ˈtu:?

**6. C.** ˈdrɔ: ə ˈdɔg, ən ˈɑ:m, ə ˈbiskit.

**6. D.** (1) ˈhenri dʌznt ˈsi: ðə ˈdɔg, biˈkɔ:z—. (2) ˈdʒein ˈɑ:nsəz ðə ˈkwestʃən, biˈkɔ:z —. (3) wi ˈlʌv auə ˈpɛərənts, biˈkɔ:z —. (4) ˈhenri ˈgivz ˈfu:d tə ˈdʒæk, biˈkɔ:z—.

**6. E.** (1) ðə ˈgɑ:dn iz — ðə ˈhaus. (2) ðə ˈdɔg iz ˈlaiiŋ — ðə ˈgrɑ:s. (3) ˈtɔm iz ˈpleiiŋ — hiz ˈbrʌðə. (4) ðə ˈpɛərənts ˈwə:k — ðɛə ˈtʃildrən. (5) ðei ə ˈwə:kiŋ — ðə ˈgɑ:dn. (6) ðə ˈdɔg iz — ðə ˈtri:. (7) auə ˈpɛərənts ə ˈveri ˈgud — ʌs. (8) ðə ˈfɑ:ðər iz ˈstændiŋ — ðə ˈgrɑ:s.

**6. F.** ˈwɔt prepəˈziʃnz ɑ: ðɛər in ˈðis ˈlesn?

## 7. ˈsevn; ˈsevnθ ˈlesn.

ˈwɔt iz ˈwʌn plʌs ˈtu: plʌs ˈfɔ:?

ə ˈwi:k hæz ˈsevn ˈdeiz. ˈsiks əv ðəm ɑ: ˈwə:kiŋ deiz (ɔ ˈwi:kdeiz). ðə ˈfə:st dei əv ðə ˈwi:k iz ˈsʌndi. wi ˈdu: nɔt ˈwə:k ɔn ˈðæt ˈdei; bət wi ˈwə:k ɔn ði ˈʌðə ˈdeiz.

ˈðis ˈbɔiz ˈneim iz ˈtɔm. ˈðæt ˈgəːlz ˈneim iz ˈdʒein; ʃi iz ˈkɔːld ˈdʒein. ˈwɔt iz ðə ˈneim əv ðə ˈseknd ˈdei əv ðə ˈwiːk? it iz ˈmʌndi. ˈwɔt iz ðə ˈθəːd ˈkɔːld? it iz ˈkɔːld ˈtjuːzdi. ˈðen wi hæv ˈwenzdi. ˈtel mi ðə ˈneimz əv ði ˈʌðə ˈdeiz! ðei ə ˈθəːzdi, ˈfraidi, ənd ˈsætədi.

ɔn ˈwitʃ ˈdeiz du ju ˈwəːk?

du ju ˈwəːk ˈɔːl ˈdei? ˈnou, wi ˈounli ˈwəːk ˈpɑːt əv ðə ˈdei. wi ˈwəːk in ðə ˈmɔːniŋ; wi ˈduː nɔt ˈwəːk in ði ɑːftəˈnuːn. ˈwɛə du ju ˈwəːk? wi ˈwəːk ət ˈskuːl. ˈwen du ju ˈgou tu ˈskuːl? wi ˈgou tu ˈskuːl in ðə ˈmɔːniŋ. dəz ˈhenri ˈgou tu ˈskuːl? ˈnou, ˈhenri ˈpleiz wið hiz ˈsistə, ənd wið hiz ˈdɔg ˈdʒæk; bət hiz ˈbrʌðə ˈtɔm ˈgouz tu ˈskuːl. ðei ˈɔːl ˈplei in ði ɑːftəˈnuːn.

**7. B.** (1) ˈtel mi ðə ˈneim əv ðə ˈθəːd ˈdei əv ðə ˈwiːk. (2) ˈwitʃ iz ðə ˈfifθ? (3) ˈwitʃ iz ðə ˈseknd? (4) ˈwen du ju ˈwəːk? (5) ˈwɛə du ju ˈgou in ðə ˈmɔːniŋ? (6) ˈwɔt iz ə ˈpɑːt əv ə ˈwiːk? (7) ɔn ˈwitʃ ˈdei du wi ˈnɔt ˈwəːk? (8) ˈhuː iz ˈiːtiŋ ə ˈbiskit? (9) ˈwɔt iz hiz ˈneim? (10) dəz ˈtɔmz ˈfɑːðə ˈwəːk ˈɔːl ˈdei? (11) ˈwɔt iź ˈðis ˈgəːl ˈkɔːld? (12) ˈwɔt iz ði ˈʌðə ˈgəːlz ˈneim? (13) ˈwitʃ ˈdei iz ðə ˈsevnθ ˈdei əv ðə ˈwiːk? (14) du ju ˈwɔːk tu ˈskuːl? (15) ˈwɛə du ju ˈləːn jɔː ˈlesnz? (16) hæv ju ˈveri ˈmeni ˈlesnz?

**7. C.** igˈzɑːmpl — 7: ˈsevn, ðə ˈsevnθ.

6, 3, 5, 1, 4, 2.

**7. D.** ˈsʌndi iz ðə ˈfəːst ˈdei əv ðə ˈwiːk; ˈmʌndi iz —; etˈsetrə.

**7. E.** (1) ai əm ˈkɔːld —; hiː —; juː —; ʃiː —. (2) wi ˈgou tu ˈskuːl; ai —; ʃiː —; ðei —. (3) ʃi dʌznt ˈplei

ət ˈsku:l; wi —; ju —; hi —; ðei —; (4) ðei ˈsei ˈðæt; wi —; ʃi —; ai —. (5) ju ˈɑ:sk ə ˈkwestʃən; ʃi —; ai —; hi —.

## 8. eit; ˈeitθ ˈlesn.

ˈˈwɔt ə ˈtwais ˈtu:? ænd ˈtwais ˈfɔ:?

ˈwɛər ɑ: wi? wi ər in ə ˈrum. ˈðis ˈrum həz (hæz+) ˈfɔ: ˈwɔ:lz ənd ˈfɔ: ˈkɔ:nəz. ðɛər ə ˈpiktʃəz ɔn ðə ˈwɔ:lz. ˈtel mi ˈhau meni ˈpiktʃəz ðɛər ˈɑ:. in ˈwʌn ˈwɔ:l ðɛər iz ə ˈˈdɔ:. ˈˈhau meni ˈkɔ:nəz hæz ə ˈdɔ:? wi ˈgou intu ðə ˈrum bai ðə ˈˈdɔ:. wi ˈˈoupn ðə ˈdɔ:, ˈðen ðə ˈdɔ:r iz ˈˈoupn. ˈsʌm ˈrumz hæv ˈˈmɔ: ðən[1] ˈwʌn ˈdɔ:.

ˈˈðis ˈrum hæz ˈˈmɔ: ðən ˈˈwʌn ˈˈwindou; it hæz ˈˈsevrəl ˈwindouz. ɑ: ðə ˈwindouz ˈˈoupn? ðə ˈwindouz ə ˈnɔt ˈˈɔ:l ˈoupn; ˈtu: ə ˈʃʌt. ˈˈwai du wi ˈoupn ðə ˈwindouz? biˈkɔ:z ði ˈˈɛə kʌmz ˈin ˈðen. ˈɛə kʌmz ˈin θru: ði ˈoupn ˈwindouz. ˈˈwɔt ˈɔ:lsou kʌmz ˈin θru(:) ðə ˈwindouz? ˈˈlait ˈɔ:lsou kʌmz ˈin.

ˈˈwɔt ˈgivz əs ˈlait bai ˈdei? ðə ˈˈsʌn ˈdʌz ˈðæt; it ˈʃainz bai ˈdei. iz ðə ˈsʌn ˈʃainiŋ ˈˈnau? du wi ˈsi: it ət ˈˈnait? ˈnou, wi du ˈˈnɔt. hæv wi ˈˈnou ˈlait ət ˈnait? ˈjes, wi ˈˈhæv; ðə ˈˈmu:n ɔ(:)fn ˈʃainz ˈðen. dʌz it giv ˈˈmɔ: ˈlait ðən ðə ˈsʌn? ˈnou, it ˈdʌznt giv ˈˈmɔ:, bət ˈˈles. it ˈɔ(:)fn ˈgivz ˈˈveri ˈˈlitl ˈlait.

8. B. (1) ˈˈhau meni ˈkɔ:nəz hæz ə ˈwindou? (2) ˈˈwɛə du wi ˈsi: ˈpiktʃəz? (3) ˈtel mi ˈhau meni ˈwindouz ðɛər ˈɑ:r in ˈðis ˈrum. (4) iz ðə ˈdɔ:r ˈoupn? (5) ˈˈwɔt

---

+ strəŋ fɔ:m.

[1] strəŋ fɔ:m — ðæn.

kʌmz ˈin θru ðə ˈwindouz? (6) ˈwen dəz ðə ˈsʌn ˈʃain? (7) θru ˈwɔt du wi ˈgou intu ə ˈrum? (8) dʌz ðə ˈsʌn giv ˈles lait ðən ðə ˈmu:n? (9) hæv wi ˈnou ˈɛə wen ðə ˈdɔ:r iz ˈʃʌt? (10) ɑ: ðɛə ˈnou ˈpiktʃəz in jɔ: ˈhaus? (11) ˈwɛə du wi ˈsi: ˈsevrəl ˈwindouz? (12) ˈtel mi ˈwɛə ðɛər ˈɑ: s(ə)m (sʌm+) ˈtri:z. (13) ɑ: ˈles ðən ˈeit ˈbɔiz (ˈgə:lz) ˈlə:niŋ ˈiŋgliʃ? (14) ˈwai dəz ˈhenri giv ˈbiskits tə (tu+) ˈdʒæk? (15) ˈwai dəz ˈdʒein ˈlʌv hə ˈmʌðə? (16) dʌz ðə ˈsʌn ˈgiv əs ˈmʌtʃ ˈlait?

8. C. igˈzɑ:mpl — rum: ðə ˈrum iz ˈpɑ:t əv ðə ˈhaus. (1) wɔ:l; (2) ˈmɔ:niŋ; (3) dɔ:; (4) dei.

8. D. igˈzɑ:mpl — ðə ˈbɔi iz — ðə ˈgɑ:dn: ðə ˈbɔi iz in ðə ˈgɑ:dn.

(1) ðə ˈgɑ:dn iz — ðə ˈhaus. (2) ði ˈɛə ˈkʌmz — ðə ˈwindouz — ðə ˈrum. (3) ðə ˈmu:n ˈʃainz — ˈnait. (4) ˈpiktʃəz ɑ: — ðə ˈwɔ:l. (5) ðæt ˈdɔg iz — ə ˈtri:. (6) auə ˈpɛərənts ɑ: ˈgud — ʌs. (7) wi ˈgou — ðə ˈrum — ðə ˈdɔ:. (8) ðə ˈsʌn ˈgivz əs ˈlait — ˈdei.

## 9. nain; ˈnainθ ˈlesn.

ˈθri: taimz ˈθri: ə ˈnain. ˈwɔt ə ˈθri: taimz ˈtu:? ɑ: ðɛə ˈmɔ:r ɔ ˈles ðən ˈnain ˈbɔiz (ˈgə:lz) in ðis ˈrum?

ˈtɔmz ˈfɑ:ðər iz ˈkɔ:ld mistə ˈdʒɔn ˈrɔbinsən. hi hæz ə ˈbrʌðə ˈwiljəm ənd ə ˈsistə ˈgreis. mistə ˈwiljəm ˈrɔbinsən iz ˈtɔmz ˈʌŋkl, ənd mis ˈgreis ˈrɔbinsən iz hiz ˈɑ:nt. ˈhu:z ˈɑ:nt iz ʃi ˈɔ:lsou? ʃi iz ˈɔ:lsou ði ˈɑ:nt əv ˈtɔmz ˈbrʌðər ənd ˈsistəz.

---

+ strɔŋ fɔ:m.

mistə ˈwiljəm ˈrɔbinsən hæz ˈsevrəl ˈtʃildrən; hi hæz ˈtu: ˈdɔ:təz, ˈi:diθ ənd ˈægnis, ənd ə ˈsʌn ˈfræŋk. ˈði:z ə ˈtɔmz ˈkʌznz. ˈhu: iz ˈi:diθs ˈʌŋkl? misiz ˈwiljəm ˈrɔbinsən iz ˈhenriz ˈɑ:nt. ˈhu: iz ˈfræŋks ˈɑ:nt? ˈtɔm iz hiz ˈʌŋklz ˈnevju; ˈmɛəri iz hər ˈʌŋklz ˈni:s.

ˈmistər ənd ˈmisiz ˈɑ:θə ˈrɔbinsən ɑ: ðə ˈpɛərənts əv mistə ˈdʒei ˈrɔbinsən, mistə ˈdʌblju ˈrɔbinsən ənd ˈmis ˈrɔbinsən. ðə ˈtʃildrən in auə ˈpiktʃə ɑ: ˈjʌŋ; ˈsou ə ˈju:. mistər ˈɑ:θə ˈrɔbinsən iz ˈkwait ˈould; ˈsou iz hiz ˈwaif. ˈði:z ə ðə ˈgræn(d)pɛərənts əv ðə ˈtʃildrən. misiz ˈɑ:θə ˈrɔbinsən iz ðɛə ˈgræn(d)mʌðə; hə ˈhʌzbənd iz ðɛə ˈgræn(d)fɑ:ðə.

ˈtɔm ənd ˈmɛəri, ˈfræŋk ənd ˈægnis ɑ: ðɛə ˈgræn(d)tʃildrən; ˈsou ər ˈɔ:l ði ˈʌðə ˈtʃildrən. ˈhau meni ˈgræn(d)sʌnz hæv ðei? ˈhu: ɑ: ðɛə ˈgræn(d)dɔ:təz? ɑ: ðɛə ˈnain ˈgræn(d)tʃildrən?

ˈnau wi hæv ˈɔ:l ˈtɔmz riˈleiʃnz.

**9. B.** (1) ˈhu: iz ˈdʒeinz ˈgrænfɑ:ðə? (2) ˈhu: ə mis ˈrɔbinsənz ˈnevjuz? (3) ˈhau meni ˈɑ:nts hæz ˈhenri? (4) hæv ju ˈtu: ˈgrænmʌðəz? (5) ɑ: ðei ˈkwait ˈjʌŋ? (6) ˈhau meni ˈdɔ:təz hæz mistə ˈwiljəm ˈrɔbinsən? (7) ˈhu: ə ˈmɛəriz ˈkʌznz? (8) hæv ju ˈmeni ˈkʌznz? (9) dəz ˈdʒein ˈlʌv hə ˈgrænpɛərənts? (10) dəz ˈfræŋk ˈliv in hiz ˈʌŋklz ˈhaus? (11) ˈhu: iz ˈfræŋks ˈmʌðə? (12) ˈhu: ər ˈi:diθs ˈkʌznz? (13) ˈhu: iz misiz ˈdʒɔn ˈrɔbinsənz ˈhʌzbənd? (14) ˈhau meni ˈni:siz hæz ʃi? (15) ˈhu:z ˈsistər iz mis ˈrɔbinsən? (16) ˈhau meni ˈgrændɔ:təz hæz mistər ˈɑ:θə ˈrɔbinsən? (17) ˈtel mi ðɛə ˈneimz. (18) ˈtel mi ðə ˈneimz əv hiz ˈsʌnz. (19) iz

ˈjɔ: ˈgrænfɑ:ðə ˈˈveri ˈould? (20) ˈhu: iz ˈkwait ˈˈsmɔ:l? (21) ˈˈhu:z ˈfæmili iz in ðə ˈpiktʃə? (22) ˈˈhu: iz ən ˈˈould ˈmæn? (23) ɑ: ju ˈjʌŋ ɔr ˈould? (24) iz ˈnain ˈˈmɔ:r ɔ ˈˈles ðən ˈsevn? (25) ˈˈwɔt iz ˈθri: plʌs ˈfaiv?

**9. C.** ˈtɔm iz ðə ˈˈsʌn əv mistə ˈˈdʒɔn ˈrɔbinsən, ðə — əv mistə ˈˈdʌblju ˈrɔbinsən, ðə — əv mistər ˈˈei ˈrɔbinsən, ðə — əv ˈˈi:diθ ˈrɔbinsən. hiz ˈsistər iz ðə — əv mistə ˈˈdʒɔn ˈrɔbinsən, etˈsetrə.

**9. D.** ðə ˈsʌn givz ˈlait; ˈsou dʌz ðə ˈmu:n.

(1) ˈtɔm hæz ə ˈbrʌðə; ˈsou —. (2) ˈhenri ˈpleiz in ði ɑ:ftəˈnu:n; ˈsou —. (3) ˈdʒein iz ə ˈgə:l; ˈsou —; (4) ə ˈdɔg hæz ˈlegz; ˈsou —. (5) ˈmɛəri ˈlʌvz hə ˈmʌðə; ˈsou —. (6) ai əm ˈlə:niŋ ˈiŋgliʃ; sou —.

**9. E.** igˈzɑ:mpl — ʃi ˈpleiz; ʃi ˈdʌz nɔt ˈplei.

(1) ai əm ˈkɔ:ld ˈwiljəm. (2) hi iz ˈwə:kiŋ in ðə ˈgɑ:dn. (3) ðə ˈsʌn iz ˈʃainiŋ. (4) wi ˈlʌv ðəm. (5) ðei ə ˈkwait ˈsmɔ:l. (6) ʃi ˈlivz ˈðɛə.

**9. F.** ˈtel mi wɔt riˈleiʃnz ju ˈhæv.

## ˈseknd ˈpɑ:t.

**10.** ten; ˈtenθ ˈlesn.

ˈhenriz ˈdɔg ˈˈdʒæk hæz ˈˈfɔ: ˈlegz. ˈhenri hæz ˈˈtu:, bət hi ˈɔ:lsou hæz ˈtu: ˈˈɑ:mz. ˈdʒæk hæz ˈˈnou ˈɑ:mz.

ˈhenri hæz ˈtu: ˈˈhændz; ənd ɔn ˈi:tʃ ˈhænd ɑ: ˈfaiv ˈˈfiŋgəz. ˈhau meni ˈhæz hi ɔn ˈˈbouθ ˈhændz?

wi ˈɔ(:)fn ˈju:z auə ˈhændz; ðei ə ˈveri ˈju:sfl. wi ˈju:z ðəm wen wi ˈrait.ˈˈwɔt du wi ˈɔ:lsou ˈju:z fə ˈraitiŋ? wi ˈju:z ə ˈpen ənd ˈiŋk, ɔ wi ˈrait wið ə (ˈled) ˈpensl. wi ˈhould ðə ˈpen wið auə ˈfiŋgəz.

wen ðɛər iz ˈiŋk ɔn auə ˈfiŋgəz, ðei ə ˈdə:ti, ənd wi ˈwɔʃ ðəm. wi ˈju:z ˈwɔ:tər ənd ˈsoup fə ˈwɔʃiŋ auə ˈhændz. ðen ðei ə ˈnɔt ˈdə:ti, bət ˈkli:n.

wi ˈrait in auə ˈkɔpibuks. wi ˈri:d ˈbuks. wi ˈhould ðəm in auə ˈhændz, ɔ ðei ˈlai ɔn ðə ˈdesk. ɑ: ðɛə ˈmeni ˈdesks in ðis ˈrum? ˈmɔ: ðən ˈten?

wi ə ˈnɔt ˈlaiiŋ ˈnau, wi ə ˈsitiŋ. ɔn ˈwɔt du ju ˈsit? wi ˈsit ɔn ə ˈben(t)ʃ; ənd ˈsou dəz ˈtɔm, wen hi iz ət ˈsku:l. dʌz auə ˈfood ˈlai ɔn ə ˈdesk? ˈnou, it is ɔn ə ˈteibl, ənd wi ˈsit ɔn ˈtʃɛəz, wen wi ˈi:t auə ˈfu:d. ˈðis ˈteibl hæz ˈfɔ: ˈlegz; ˈsou həv ˈðouz ˈtʃɛəz.

**10. B.** (1) ˈwɔt du wi ˈri:d? (2) ˈwɛə du ˈði:z ˈɔ(:)fn ˈlai? (3) ˈwɔt du wi ˈhould ðəm ˈwið? (4) ˈwɔt du wi ˈdu:, wen auə ˈhændz ə ˈdə:ti? (5) ˈhu: ˈwɔʃiz ˈdʒæk? (6) iz ðɛər ə ˈteibl in ðis ˈrum? (7) ˈwɔt ə ju ˈsitiŋ ɔn, ˈnau? (8) ˈwɔt du ju ˈsit ɔn, wen ju ər ˈi:tiŋ? (9) ˈhau meni ˈlegz hæz ə ˈtʃɛə? (10) ˈɑ: nɔt jɔ: ˈhændz ˈlaiiŋ ɔn ðə ˈdesk? (11) ˈwɔt du ju ˈju:z fə ˈraitiŋ? (12) ˈiz ðɛə səm ˈiŋk ɔn ðə ˈdesk? (13) ˈhau meni ˈfiŋgəz hæv ju ɔn ˈbouθ ˈhændz? (14) ɑ: ˈtɔmz ˈfiŋgəz ˈveri ˈɔ(:)fn ˈdə:ti? (15) ˈhu:z ˈhændz ə ˈkwait ˈkli:n? (16) ˈhau meni ˈtaimz ˈθri: iz ˈnain? (17) wið ˈwitʃ ˈpɑ:t əv jɔ: ˈhænd du ju ˈhould ðə ˈpen? (18) wið ˈhu:m du ju ˈɔ(:)fn ˈplei?

**10. C.** ˈdrɔ: ə ˈhænd, ə ˈtʃɛə, ə ˈteibl, ə ˈben(t)ʃ.

**10. D.** ˈgiv ði ˈɔpəzits: (1) ˈdə:ti, (2) jʌŋ, (3) big, (4) ould, (5) kli:n, (6) mɔ:, (7) ˈoupn, (8) ˈkwestʃən, (9) smɔ:l, (10) ʃʌt, (11) les, (12) ˈɑ:nsə.

**10. E.** ig'zɑ:mpl — wə:k: hi iz 'wə:kiŋ.

(1) sit, (2) lai, (3) kʌm, (4) gou, (5) liv, (6) wɔʃ.

**10. F.** 'ten iz 'wʌn ənd 'nain, 'tu: ənd —, 'θri: ənd —, et'setrə.

**10. G.** ig'zɑ:mpl — 4: fɔ:, ðə 'fɔ:θ.

2, 6, 9, 5, 8, 1, 3.

**11.** i'levn; i'levnθ 'lesn.

wi 'i:t 'θri: 'taimz ə 'dei; wi hæv 'θri: 'mi:lz. ðə "fə:st 'mi:l iz in ðə 'mɔ:niŋ; 'ðæt iz auə "brekfəst. in ðə 'midl əv ðə 'dei wi hæv auə "dinə, wi "dain. in ði 'i:vniŋ wi 'i:t auə "sʌpə. du wi 'i:t auə 'mi:lz in "ðis 'rum? 'nou, 'ðis iz ə "sku:lrum. wi hæv auə 'mi:lz in ə "dainiŋrum.

"hu: 'kuks ðə 'mi:lz fɔr əs? ðə "kuk dʌz 'ðæt in ðə 'kitʃin. ðɛər iz ə 'big 'faiər in ðə 'kitʃin.

ðɛər iz ə 'faiər in ðə 'dainiŋrum 'tu:, bi'kɔ:z ðə 'weðər iz 'kould. "wintər iz 'kʌmiŋ. ðə 'deiz ə 'ʃɔ:t in 'wintə, ənd ðə 'naits ə 'lɔŋ. ðə 'fə:st 'si:zn əv ðə 'jə:r iz "spriŋ, ənd ðə 'nekst iz "sʌmə. in 'sʌmə ðə 'weðər iz 'hɔt, ənd wi hæv 'nou 'faiər in ðə 'dainiŋrum. bət ðɛər iz 'ɔ:lwəz ə 'faiər in ðə 'kitʃin, bi'kɔ:z wi hæv 'hɔt 'mi:lz in 'sʌmər ənd 'wintə.

ɑ: ðɛər 'ounli "θri: 'si:znz? 'nou, ðɛər iz 'wʌn 'mɔ:: it iz "ɔ:təm.

**11. B.** (1) 'wɔt iz ðə "fə:st 'mi:l 'kɔ:ld? (2) "wen du wi hæv 'sʌpə? (3) "hau meni 'si:znz ɑ: ðɛər in ðə 'jə:? (4) 'hu: iz "ɔ:lwəz in ðə 'kitʃin? (5) 'wɛər iz it 'ɔ(:)fn "veri 'hɔt? (6) "wen ə ðə 'deiz 'kwait 'ʃɔ:t?

(7) ˈhu:z ˈpensl iz ˈlɔŋ? (8) wið ˈhu:m du ju ˈsit ət ˈteibl? (9) ˈwai iz ðɛər ˈɔ:lwəz ə ˈfaiər in ðə ˈkitʃin? (10) du ju hæv ˈdinər in ðə ˈsku:lrum? (11) ɑ: jɔ: ˈfiŋgəz ˈlɔŋ ɔ ˈʃɔ:t? ˈtel mi (12) ðə ˈpɑ:ts əv ðə ˈdei; (13) ðə ˈsi:znz əv ðə ˈjə:; (14) ðə ˈdeiz əv ðə ˈwi:k. (15) ˈhu: iz in ðə ˈnekst ˈrum? (16) iz ðə ˈfaiər in ðə ˈkɔ:nər əv auə ˈrum?

**11. C.** igˈzɑ:mpl — ˈpluərəl: ðə ˈdeiz ə ˈlɔŋ.
ˈsiŋgjulə: ðə ˈdei iz ˈlɔŋ.

(1) ðei ˈgou tu ˈði:z ˈgɑ:dnz. (2) ðei ˈwɔʃ ðɛə ˈhændz. (3) wi ˈju:z ˈði:z ˈpenz fə ˈraitiŋ. (4) ˈðouz ˈtʃildrən ə ˈlə:niŋ ˈiŋgliʃ. (5) wi ə ˈpleiiŋ wið ˈðouz ˈbɔiz. (6) ðei ˈdu: nɔt ˈdain ˈhiə. (7) ˈði:z ˈdɔ:təz ˈkuk fə ðɛə ˈfɑ:ðəz.

**11. D.** ˈgiv ði ˈɔpəzits əv: (1) lɔŋ, (2) hɔt, (3) lai, (4) ˈmɔ:niŋ, (5) dei, (6) big, (7) kli:n.

**12.** twelv; ˈtwelfθ ˈlesn.

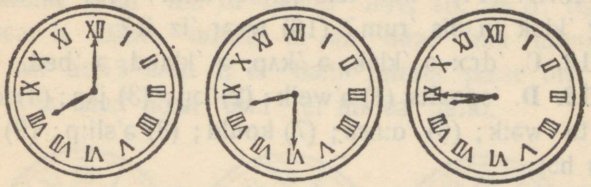
ˈtwelv (ə ˈdʌzn) iz ˈθri: taimz ˈfɔ:. ˈtwais ˈtwelv ɑ: ˈtwentiˈfɔ:; ˈðæt iz ˈɔ:lsou ˈfɔ: taimz ˈsiks. ˈtwelv iz ðə ˈhɑ:f əv ˈtwentiˈfɔ:, ænd ˈsiks iz ə ˈkwɔ:tər əv it.

ðə ˈdei hæzˈ ˈtwais ˈtwelv ˈauəz.

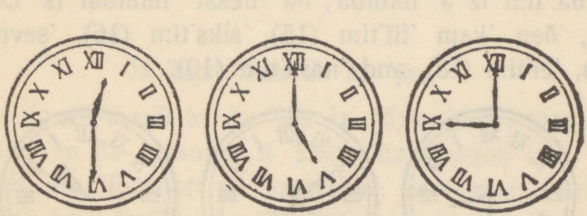
ðə ˈfə:st ˈauər əv ˈɔ:l iz in ðə ˈmidl əv ðə ˈnait. ðə ˈsʌn dʌznt ˈʃain θru auə ˈwindouz ˈðen; bət ðə ˈmu:n ˈsʌmtaimz givz ˈlait, wen it iz nɔt biˈhaind ðə ˈklaudz. æt ˈðæt ˈauə wi ə ˈsli:piŋ in ˈbed.

wi ˈweik ˈʌp in ðə ˈmɔ:niŋ ət ˈsevn əˈklɔk (ət ˈsevn ˈeiˈem). ðə ˈklɔk ˈtelz əs ðə ˈtaim. wi hæv ˈbrekfəst ət ˈeit, ənd wi ˈsit ət ðə ˈteibl fə ˈhɑ:f ən auə,

frəm ˈeit til ˈhɑ:f pɑ:st ˈeit. æt ə ˈkwɔ:tə tə ˈnain wi ˈgou tə ˈsku:l. æt ˈnain ə klɔk wi ə ˈðɛə, ənd ˈðen wi ˈwə:k fə ˈθri: ˈauəz til ˈnu:n. ˈɑ:ftə ˈsku:l wi ˈgou ˈhoum ən ˈdain ət ˈhɑ:f pɑ:s(t) ˈtwelv.



in ði ɑ:ftəˈnu:n wi ˈplei in ðə ˈgɑ:dn, if wi hæv ˈnou ˈwə:k ənd if ðə ˈsʌn iz ˈʃainiŋ. if wi ˈhæv ˈwə:k, wi du: ˈðæt ˈfə:st. ət ˈfaiv əklɔk wi ˈdriŋk ə ˈkʌp əv ˈti:, ənd ˈi:t s(ə)m ˈbred ən ˈbʌtə. ət ˈsevn (ˈpi: ˈem, in ði ɑ:ftəˈnu:n ɔr ˈi:vniŋ) wi hæv auə ˈsʌpə, ənd ˈnɔt ˈlɔŋ ˈɑ:ftə ˈðæt wi ˈgou tə ˈbed. bai ˈnain ə klɔk ət ˈnait wi ər ˈɔ:l əˈsli:p; bət wi ə ˈkwait əˈweik ˈlɔŋ biˈfɔ: ˈnain ˈei ˈem.



**12. B.** (1) wɔt iz (1) ə ˈhɑ:f əv ˈtwelv? (2) ə ˈkwɔ:tər əv ˈeit? ˈhau meni ˈauəz ɑ: ðɛər (3) in ə ˈdei? (4) in ˈhɑ:f ə ˈdei? (5) ˈwen du ju ˈi:t jɔ: ˈbrekfəst? (6) ˈwɔt du ju ˈdriŋk ət ˈfaiv ə klɔk? (7) ˈwen du ju ˈgou tə

ˈbed? (8) ˈhau ˈlɔŋ du ju ˈsli:p? (9) dʌz ðə ˈsʌn ˈʃain wen ju ər əˈsli:p? (10) du ju ˈsʌmtaimz ˈwə:k in ði ɑ:ftəˈnu:n? (11) ˈhu: ˈɔlwəz ˈpleiz ˈðen? (12) du ju ˈɔ(:)fn ˈi:t ″bʌtə wið jɔ: ˈbred? (13) ″wɔt du ju ˈdu: frəm ˈten til iˈlevn? (14) ″wɔt ˈtelz ju ðə ˈtaim? (15) ˈiz ðɛər ə ˈbig ˈklɔk in ðis ˈrum? (16) wɛər ˈiz it?

**12. C.** ˈdrɔ: ə ˈklɔk, ə ˈkʌp, ə ˈklaud, ə ˈbed.

**12. D.** ˈɔpəzits: (1) əˈweik; (2) lɔŋ; (3) jʌŋ; (4) kli:n; (5) tu ˈwə:k; (6) ˈɑ:nsə; (7) kould; (8) əˈsli:p; (9) ʃɔ:t, (10) hɔt.

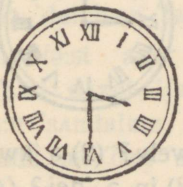
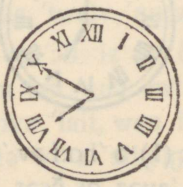
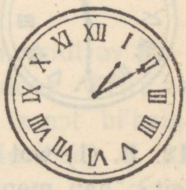
**12. E.** 5+3=8; 3×3=9; 9+2=11; 2×6=12; 7+4=11; 3×4=12.

**12. F.** igˈzɑ:mpl—9.45 ˈei ˈem: ə ˈkwɔ:tə tu ˈten in ðə ˈmɔ:niŋ.

(1) 3.30 ˈei ˈem; (2) 8.15 ˈpi: ˈem; (3) 7.45 ˈpi: ˈem; (4) 1.45 ˈei ˈem; (5) 11.15 ˈpi: ˈem; (6) 5.45 ˈei ˈem.

## 13.

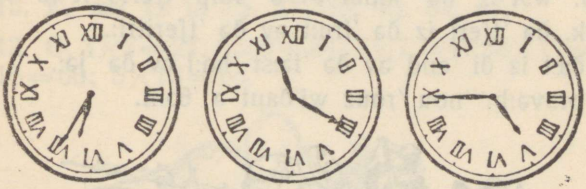
ˈθə:ˈti:n iz ə ˈnʌmbə; ðə ˈnekst ˈnʌmbər iz ˈfɔ:ˈti:n (14), ˈðen ˈkʌm ˈfifˈti:n (15), ˈsiksˈti:n (16), ˈsevnˈti:n (17), ˈeiˈti:n (18), ənd ˈnainˈti:n (19).

ˈtwais ˈten ɑ: ″twenti (20); ˈæd ˈten tu ˈtwenti ænd ju hæv ″θə:ti (30); ˈten ˈmɔ:, ænd ju hæv ″fɔ:ti (40). ˈfaiv

ˈtenz ɑ: ˈˈfifti; ˈθri: taimz ˈtwenti ɑ: ˈˈsiksti (60); ˈtwais ˈθə:tiˈfaiv ə ˈˈsevnti (70); ˈæd ˈten, ænd ju hæv ˈˈeiti (80); ˈðen ˈkʌmz ˈˈnainti (90); ænd ˈtwais ˈfifti ɑ:r ə ˈˈhʌndrəd (100).

ˈkaunt frɔm ˈten tu ˈtwenti ˈfaiv, 10, 25 ɑ: ˈfigəz. ðɛər ə ˈsiksti ˈˈminits in ən ˈauə. ˈˈhau meni in ˈhɑ:f ən auə? wen it iz ˈθə:ti ˈminits ˈpɑ:st ˈθri:, wi ˈsei: it iz ˈˈhɑ:f pɑ:st ˈˈθri:. ˈtel mi ðə ˈˈtaim.



ˈtel mi ðə ˈˈdeit.

it iz ðə ˈfɔ:θ, ˈθə:ˈti:nθ, ˈtwenti:θ, ˈtwentiˈfifθ, ˈtwentiˈˈeitθ əv ðə ˈmʌnθ.

ˈˈhau meni ˈmʌnθs ɑ: ðɛə? ðɛər ə ˈˈtwelv.

## ðə ˈfə:st ˈhɑ:f əv ðə ˈjə:.

ðə ˈˈfə:st ˈmʌnθ əv ðə ˈjə:r iz ˈˈdʒænjuəri; ˈðen ðə ˈˈsnou iz ɔn ðə ˈgraund. it ˈkʌvəz ðə ˈgraund ənd ˈɔ:l iz ˈwait. in ˈˈfebruəri wi ˈsʌmtaimz hæv ˈmʌtʃ ˈˈrein; it ˈkʌmz frəm ðə ˈˈklaudz. ˈˈðis ˈmʌnθ hæz ˈounli ˈtwentiˈˈeit ˈdeiz, iˈksept in ˈˈli:pjə:; ˈðen it hæz ˈwʌn ˈmɔ:. ðə ˈnekst ˈmʌnθ iz ˈˈmɑ:tʃ; wi ˈnau ˈsi: səm ˈˈflauəz, ənd wi ˈsei: “ˈˈspriŋ iz ˈkʌmiŋ!” ðə ˈdeiz ə ˈles ˈʃɔ:t ən(d) ðə ˈsʌn iz ˈwɔ:m; it iz ˈnɔt ˈhɔt.

in ˈeiprəl ðɛər iz ˈnou ˈsnou. ðə ˈbə:dz ˈsiŋ in ðə ˈgri:n ˈtri:z, ænd wi ˈgou fə ˈlɔŋ ˈwɔ:ks. ˈmei iz ə ˈlʌvli ˈmʌnθ; it iz ˈwɔ:m ˈnau aut əv ˈdɔ:z, ænd in ðə ˈmidl əv ðə ˈdei it iz ˈsʌmtaimz ˈkwait ˈhɔt. ˈðen wi ˈoupn ðə ˈdɔ:z ənd ˈwindouz ænd ði ˈɛə kʌmz intu ðə ˈrumz ənd ðei ə ˈku:l. ˈsʌmtaimz it ˈreinz, ənd ˈðen ði ˈɛər iz ˈkwait ˈku:l. in ˈdʒu:n ðə ˈrouziz ɑ: ˈblu:miŋ in ðə ˈgɑ:dn, ænd ət ði ˈend əv ðə ˈmʌnθ ˈtʃeriz ɑ: ˈraip. ˈwɔt iz ðə ˈkʌlər əv ə ˈraip ˈtʃeri? it iz ˈred ɔ ˈblæk. ðə ˈtʃeri iz ðə ˈfru:t əv ðə ˈtʃeritri:.

ˈðæt iz ði ˈend əv ðə ˈfə:st ˈhɑ:f əv ðə ˈjə:.

ˈprɔvə:b: ˈnou ˈrouz wiˈðaut ə ˈθɔ:n.



**13. B.** ˈhau meni ˈdeiz ɑ: ðɛər (1) in ˈdʒænjuəri? (2) in ˈdʒu:n? (3) ˈwitʃ iz ðə ˈfɔ:θ ˈmʌnθ? (4) iz it ˈveri ˈkould ˈðen? (5) ˈɑ: ðə ˈdeiz ˈkwait ˈʃɔ:t? (6) dʌz it ˈɔ:lwəz ˈrein in ˈfebruəri? (7) ˈhau meni ˈdeiz hæz ˈðis ˈmʌnθ in ˈli:pjə:? (8) ˈwen iz ðə ˈgraund ˈwait? (9) in ˈwitʃ ˈmʌnθ du ðə ˈrouziz ˈblu:m? (10) ˈwɔt iz ðə ˈkʌlər əv ˈraip ˈtʃeriz? (11) ˈwɔt iz ðɛə ˈkʌlə wen ðei ə ˈnɔt ˈraip? (12) əv ˈwɔt ˈtri: ɑ: ðei ðə ˈfru:t? (13) du ju ˈsʌmtaimz ˈi:t ˈtʃeriz? (14) ˈwen du ju ˈgou fə ˈlɔŋ ˈwɔ:ks? (15) ˈwai du wi ˈoupn ðə ˈdɔ:z wen it iz ˈwɔ:m? (16) ˈhau meni ˈminits ɑ: ðɛər in ə ˈkwɔ:tər əv ən ˈauə? (17) ˈwen du ju ˈplei aut əv ˈdɔ:z?

**13. C.** ˈdrɔ: ə ˈbə:d, ə ˈtʃeri, ə ˈrouz.

**13. D.** it iz iˈlevn ˈei ˈem. ˈwɔt iz ðə ˈtaim (1) in ə ˈˈkwɔ:tər əv ən ˈˈauə? (2) in ˈˈfɔ:ti ˈˈminits? (3) in ən ˈˈauər ənd ə ˈˈhɑ:f? (4) in ə ˈˈhʌndrəd ˈˈminits? (5) in ˈˈtu: ˈˈauəz ənd ˈˈθri: ˈˈkwɔ:təz? (16) in ˈˈtwelv ˈˈauəz?

**13. E.** it iz ðə ˈtwentiˈseknd əv ˈdʒænjuəri. ˈwɔt iz ðə ˈdeit (1) in ə ˈˈwi:k? (2) in ˈˈnain ˈˈdeiz? (3) in ə ˈˈmʌnθ? (4) in ə ˈˈkwɔ:tər əv ə ˈˈjə:?

**13. F.** ˈæd 12 tu 15, 27, 39, 45, 82, 67.

**13. G.** $3\times7=21$; $6\times9=54$; $7\times7=49$; $8\times11=88$; $4\times15=60$; $5\times13=65$.



**14.** ðə ˈseknd ˈhɑ:f əv ðə ˈjə:

ðə ˈfə:st ˈmʌnθ əv ðə ˈsʌmmər iz dʒuˈˈlai. ðə ˈhi:t iz ˈveri ˈgreit in ðis ˈmʌnθ. ðə ˈkɔ:n iz ˈnou ˈlɔŋgə ˈˈgri:n; it iz ˈˈjelou ˈnau. in ðə ˈnekst ˈmʌnθ, in ˈˈɔ:gəst, it biˈkʌmz ˈkwait ˈˈraip. in sepˈˈembə ðɛər iz ˈles ˈhi:t ðən in ˈɔ:gəst; bət it iz ˈstil ˈwɔ:m. ˈmeni ˈfru:ts ˈraipn ˈnau: ði ˈæpl ɔn ði ˈæpltri:, ðə ˈpɛər ɔn ðə ˈpɛətri:, ənd ðə ˈplʌm ɔn ðə ˈplʌmtri:. in ðə ˈspringtaim ˈblɔsmz ˈkʌvə ˈði:z ˈtri:z; ˈðen ðei ɑ: ˈlʌvli.

ðə ˈweðə biˈkʌmz ˈkouldər in ɔkˈˈtoubə, ənd in ðə ˈmɔ:niŋ ðɛər iz ˈɔ(:)fn ə ˈˈmist ɔr ə ˈˈfɔg. in noˈˈvembər

ən di″sembə it iz ′stil ′kouldə, ənd ′snou ′sʌmtaimz ′fɔ:lz ɔn ðə ′graund, bi′fɔ: ðə ′jə: ′kʌmz tu ən ′end. ′ðen wi ′θrou ′snoubɔ:lz. if ðə ′weðər iz ′nɔt ′kould, ðə ′snou ′melts ′su:n ′ɑ:ftə ′fɔ:liŋ, it bi′kʌmz ′wɔ:tə. bət if it iz ″veri ′kould ənd ðə ′snou dʌz nɔt ′melt, ðen wi ′sei: “it iz ″fri:ziŋ!”

wen ðə ′wɔ:tə ′fri:ziz, it bi′kʌmz ″ais. wen ði ′ais iz ′kwait ″θik, wi ′wɔ:k ɔ ′skeit ɔn it wið auə ′frendz. if ju ′wɔ:k ɔ skeit ɔn ″θin ′ais, ju ′fɔ:l intu ðə ′wɔ:tər ənd bi′kʌm ′wet ənd ′kould. wen ði ′ais ′melts, it bi′kʌmz ′θinər ənd ′θinə.

′wen iz ′krisməs ′dei? it iz ɔn ðə ′twenti′fifθ əv di′sembə. ′wen iz ′nju: ′jə:z ′dei? it iz ɔn ðə ′fə:st əv ′dʒænjuəri. ′wen iz jɔ: ′bə:θdei, ′tɔm? it iz ɔn ðə ′fif′ti:nθ əv dʒu′lai? ′hau ″ould ɑ: ju? ai əm ′eit (jə:z ′ould).

**14. B.** (1) iz ðə ′weðə ′kouldər in ″sʌmmər ɔr in ″wintə? (2) ″wen ɑ: ðə ′deiz ′lɔŋgə? (3) ″wɔt ′ɔ(:)fn ′fɔ:lz frəm ðə ′klaudz in ′dʒænjuəri? (4) ″wɔt dəz it ′kʌvə? (5) ′wɔt ′fru:ts ′raipn in ði ′ɔ:təm? (6) ″wen iz it ′stil ′wɔ:m? (7) ″wen iz it ′nou ′lɔŋgə ′wɔ:m? (8) iz mistər ″ɑ:θə ′rɔbinsən ′stil ″jʌŋ? ′nou, hi iz ′nou ′lɔŋgə ′jʌŋ, hi iz ′kwait ″ould. (9) iz ″dʒein ′nou ′lɔŋgə ′jʌŋ? jes, ʃi iz ″stil ′jʌŋ; ʃi iz ′kwait ə ″tʃaild. (10) ″wen du ju bi′kʌm ′wet? (11) ″wen dəz ðə ′weðə bi′kʌm ′kould? hæv ju (12) ən ″eldə ″brʌðə? (13) ə ″jʌŋgə ″sistə? (14) ″wen ɑ: ðɛə ′meni ′blɔsmz ɔn ðə ′tʃeritri:? (15) ″wen iz it ′lʌvli in ðə ′gɑ:dn? (16) ″wen du wi ′i:t ′raip ′pɛəz? (17) ″wɔt iz ðə ′kʌlər əv ðə ′kɔ:n bi′fɔ:r it iz ′raip? (18) ″wɔt dəz ði ′ais bi′kʌm wen it

ˈmelts? (19) ˈˈwɔt dəz ðə ˈwɔːtə biˈkʌm wen it ˈfriːziz? (20) ˈˈwen du ju ˈgou fə ˈlɔŋ ˈwɔːks wið jɔː ˈfrendz?

**14. C.** ˈdrɔː ə ˈpɛə, ə ˈbɔːl.

**14. D.** igˈzɑːmpl — ould: ˈðis ˈbɔi iz ˈouldə ðən ˈðæt ˈbɔi.

(1) kould, (2) θin, (3) lɔŋ, (4) θik, (5) jʌŋ.

**14. E.** (1) ˈtel mi ðə ˈneimz əv səm ˈtriːz.

(2) ˈwɔt riˈleiʃnz hæv ju?

(3) ˈwɔt du ju ˈsiː in ðə ˈskuːlrum?

## 15. ˈtriːz ənd ˈflauəz.

ˈˈhau ə ðə ˈliːvz in ˈspriŋ? in ˈspriŋ ðei ə ˈˈgriːn, bət in ˈɔːtəm ðə ˈliːvz əv ˈmeni ˈtriːz ˈˈtʃein(d)ʒ ˈˈkʌlə; ðei biˈkʌm ˈˈred ənd ˈˈbraun. ˈðen ðə ˈwudz ə ˈveri ˈˈbjuːtifl; bət ˈounli fər ə ˈˈʃɔːt ˈˈtaim. ˈsuːn ðə ˈˈstrɔŋ ˈˈwind ˈkʌmz, ənd ˈblouz əpɔn ðə ˈliːvz. ˈðen ˈwʌn ˈliːf ɑːftər əˈnʌðə ˈfɔːlz frəm ðə ˈbrɑːn(t)ʃiz tə ðə ˈgraund. wi ˈnou ˈlɔŋgə ˈsiː ðə ˈgraund, biˈkɔːz ðɛər ə ˈsou ˈmeni ˈliːvz. ˈðiːz ˈliːvz ə ˈˈded.

ˈˈʌðə ˈtriːz, hauˈevə, ɑː ˈgriːn ˈˈɔːl θru ðə ˈˈjəː; ðei ər ˈˈevəgriːn. ðei hæv ðə ˈseim ˈkʌlər ˈˈɔːlwəz, ikˈsept wen ðə ˈsnou ˈkʌvəz ðəm. ˈwɔt iz ðɛə ˈkʌlə ˈˈðen?

ˈflauəz hæv ˈˈmeni ˈkʌləz; ˈˈsʌm ˈgrou in ðə ˈgɑːdn ənd ˈmeik it ˈbjuːtiful, ˈˈʌðəz ər in ðə ˈˈwudz ənd in ðə ˈˈmedouz, əˈmʌŋ ðə ˈˈgrɑːs. ˈˈwɔt iz mɔː ˈbjuːtiful ðən ə ˈˈrouz? ˈˈsʌmtaimz, wen ðə ˈweðə grouz ˈhɔtər ənd ˈhɔtə, ənd ðɛər iz ˈnou ˈrein, ˈflauəz biˈkʌm ˈˈwiːk ən ˈˈdai.

wi ˈgiv ˈˈwɔːtə tu ðə ˈflauəz in auə ˈgɑːdn; wi ˈwɔːtə ðəm in ði ˈˈiːvniŋ, wen ðə ˈsʌn dʌz nɔt ˈʃain.

ˈðen ðei ˈliv ə ˈlɔŋ ˈtaim ænd ðei ˈmeik əs ˈˈhæpi, wen wi ˈsi: ðɛə ˈbju:tiful ˈkʌləz. wi ə ˈstil ˈˈhæpiə, hauˈevə, wen wi ˈgiv ðəm tu ə ˈfrend. ˈfrendz ənd ˈflauəz ənd ˈbuks ˈgiv əs ˈgreit ˈhæpinis.

**15. B.** (1) ˈˈwen du ðə ˈli:vz ˈtʃein(d)ʒ ˈkʌlə? (2) ˈˈwen ə ðə ˈtri:z ˈstil ˈbju:tiful? (3) ˈˈwɔt ˈmeiks ðə ˈli:vz ˈfɔ:l? (4) ˈˈwɔt du wi ˈsi: in ðə ˈmedouz? (5) ˈˈwen ə ðei ˈkwait ˈwait? (6) ˈˈwen dəz ðə ˈsnou ˈmelt? (7) ˈˈwɔt iz ðɛə ˈkʌlə ˈðen? (8) ˈˈwɔt ˈmeiks ju ˈhæpi? (9) ɑ:r ˈˈɔ:l ˈdɔgz (əv) ðə ˈseim ˈkʌlə? (10) du ˈdɔgz liv ˈˈveri ˈlɔŋ? (11) du ðei ˈliv ˈˈlɔŋgə ðən ə ˈmæn? (12) ˈˈhu: ˈsʌmtaimz ˈsit ɔn ðə ˈbrɑ:n(t)ʃiz əv ˈtri:z? (13) ˈˈwai du wi ˈwɔ:tər auə ˈgɑ:dn in ðə ˈsʌmə? (14) iz mistə ˈdʒɔn ˈrɔbinsən ə ˈˈstrɔŋ ˈmæn? (15) iz hiz ˈsʌn ˈˈstrɔŋgər ɔ ˈˈwi:kə ðən ˈhi:? (16) iz hi ˈˈhæpi wen hi ˈsi:z hiz ˈgɑ:dn? (17) ˈˈwɔt meiks him ˈstil ˈˈhæpiə? (18) ˈˈwen dəz ði ˈais grou ˈθinə? (19) ˈˈwɔt ˈsʌmtaimz ˈfɔ:lz əpɔn ðə ˈgraund? (20) ˈˈwɔt du ju ˈdu: biˈfɔ: ju ˈgou tu ˈsku:l in ðə ˈmɔ:niŋ?

**15. C.** ˈdrɔ: ðə ˈbrɑ:n(t)ʃ əv ə ˈtri:, wið ˈli:vz.

**15. D.** ˈwɔt iz ðə ˈkʌlər (1) əv ə ˈˈraip ˈˈtʃeri? (2) əv ə ˈˈded ˈˈli:f? (3) əv ˈˈhenriz ˈˈdɔg? (4) əv ðə ˈˈmedouz in ˈˈspriŋ? (5) əv ðə ˈˈkɔ:n in ˈˈɔ:gəst? (6) əv ðə ˈˈsnou?

**15. E.** ˈtel mi ðə ˈpɑ:ts (1) əv ə ˈˈtri:; (2) əv ə ˈˈjə:; (3) əv ən ˈˈauə; (4) əv ə ˈˈhaus?

**15. F.** igˈzɑ:mpl — kould, kouldə.

(1) strɔŋ, —; (2) ould, —; (3) ʃɔ:t, —; (4) jʌŋ, —

(5) θin, —; (6) greit, —; (7) ˈhæpi, —; (8) ˈbju:tifl, —; (9) ˈdə:ti, —; (10) hɔt, —; (11) ˈju:sfl, —; (12) ˈlʌvli, —;

**15. G.** igˈzɑ:mpl — ˈðis ˈdɔg iz ˈjʌŋ; ˈði:z ˈdɔgz ə ˈjʌŋ.

(1) ˈðis ˈtʃeri iz ˈraip. (2) mai ˈbrʌðər iz ˈˈgud tu mi, ənd ai ˈˈlʌv him. (3) ən ˈæpl iz ˈfɔ:liŋ frəm ðə ˈbrɑ:n(t)ʃ əv ˈðæt ˈtri:. (4) ʃi ˈgivz hər ə ˈbju:tifl ˈflauə. (5) ˈðɛəz ə ˈˈbɔi in ðə ˈgɑ:dn. (6) ˈwɔt iz ðə ˈkʌlər əv ˈðæt ˈli:f? (7) ə ˈrouz iz ɔn ðə ˈteibl. (8) ˈðæt ˈtʃeri iz ˈˈkwait ˈˈblæk.

## 16. ˈju:sfl ˈθiŋz.

ˈtri:z ə ˈˈju:sfl. wi ˈi:t ðɛə ˈˈfru:t, ænd wi ˈju:z ðɛə ˈˈwud fə ˈmeikiŋ ˈmeni ˈθiŋz: fə ˈˈteiblz ən ˈˈtʃɛəz, fə ˈˈdesks ənd ˈˈben(t)ʃiz ænd ˈsou ˈɔn. ˈɔ:l ˈði:z ə ˈmeid əv ˈˈwud.

ˈðis ˈˈblækbɔ:d iz ə ˈwudn ˈbɔ:d, witʃ iz ˈpeintid ˈblæk. ai ˈdu: nɔt ˈrait ɔn it wið ə ˈˈpen ɔr ə ˈˈled ˈˈpensl; ai ˈju:z ˈði:z wen ai ˈrait ɔn ˈwait ˈˈpeipə, bʌt ˈðis ˈbɔ:d iz ˈˈblæk; ənd ˈsou ai ˈju:z ˈwait ˈˈtʃɔ:k.

fɔ ˈkli:niŋ ðis ˈbɔ:d ai hæv ə ˈˈdʌstə, witʃ ˈsu:n biˈkʌmz ˈdʌsti wið ðə ˈdʌst əv ðə ˈtʃɔ:k. ˈsʌmtaimz ðə ˈtʃɔ:k ˈfɔ:lz ɔn mai ˈkout. ai ˈdu: nɔt ˈkli:n mai ˈkout wið ðə ˈdʌstə; if ai ˈdu: ˈðæt, it biˈkʌmz ˈstil ˈˈmɔ: ˈdʌsti. ˈnou, ai ˈkli:n it wið ə ˈˈbrʌʃ. wen ðə ˈkout iz ˈwel ˈbrʌʃt, it iz ˈkwait ˈkli:n.

ðə ˈrum iz ˈɔ:lsou ˈkli:nd wið ə ˈbrʌʃ, bət ˈðæt iz nɔt ðə ˈseim ˈbrʌʃ. ðə ˈmeid, hu ˈkli:nz ˈðə ˈrum, ˈju:ziz ə ˈˈbig ˈbrʌʃ, ə ˈˈbru(:)m. ɑ: ðɛər eni ˈˈʌðə ˈbrʌʃiz?

ˈjes, ðɛər ər ˈˌʌðə ˈkaindz əv ˈbrʌʃiz. ai ˈju:z ə ˈˌtu:θbrʌʃ fɔ ˈkli:niŋ mai ˈti:θ. ai ˈkli:n ðəm ˈtwais ə ˈdei, in ðə ˈmɔ:niŋ ənd in ði ˈi:vniŋ. ai ˈɔ:lsou hæv ə ˈˌhɛəbrʌʃ, wið ˈwitʃ ai ˈbrʌʃ mai ˈhɛə. ðə ˈhɛər əv ðə ˈhed iz ˈfɛə (ɔˌˈlait), ɔ ˈdɑ:k, ənd ˈsʌmtaimz ˈkwait ˈblæk.

**16. B.** (1) ˈˌhau du ju ˈkli:n jɔ: ˈkout? (2) ˈˌwɔt du ju ˈju:z fə ˈkli:niŋ jɔ ˈti:θ? (3) ˈˌhau ˈɔ(:)fn du ju ˈbrʌʃ jɔ: ˈhɛə? (4) ˈˌhu: ˈju:ziz ə ˈbru(:)m? (5) ˈˌwɔt du ai ˈrait ɔn ðə ˈbɔ:d wið? (6) ˈˌwɔt du ju ˈrait ɔn wið jɔ: ˈˌpen? (7) ˈˌwɔt iz ˈmeid əv ˈwud? (8) ˈˌwen iz ðə ˈgraund ˈɔ(:)fn ˈkʌvəd wið ˈsnou? (9) ˈˌhu:z ˈbuks ə ˈkwait ˈkli:n? (10) ˈtel mi wɔt ˈθiŋz ɑ: ˈlaiiŋ ɔn jɔ: ˈdesk. (11) iz ðə ˈpensl witʃ ju: ˈju:z ˈˌbig ɔ ˈˌsmɔ:l? (12) iz jɔ: ˈpen əmʌŋ ˈsevrəl ˈpenslz? (13) hæv ju eni ˈˌʌðə ˈpenz? (14) ɑ:r eni ˈbuks ˈlaiiŋ ɔn jɔ: ˈdesk? (15) ˈˌhu:z ˈkout iz ˈkʌvəd wið ˈtʃɔ:k? (16) ˈˌwɛə du ˈmeni ˈtri:z ˈgrou? (17) in ˈwitʃ ˈsi:zn du ðə ˈli:vz əv ˈmeni ˈtri:z ˈdai? (18) ɑ: ðɛər eni ˈtri:z hu:z ˈli:vz ɑ:r ˈˌɔ:lwəz ˈˌgri:n? (19) iz ðɛər eni ˈpeipə ˈlaiiŋ ɔn jɔ: ˈdesk? (20) ˈˌwɔt iz ə ˈblækbɔ:d?

**16. C.** ˈdrɔ: ə ˈkout, ə ˈbru(:)m, ə ˈtu:θbrʌʃ.

**16. D.** ˈtel mi ˈsevrəl ˈkaindz (1) əv ˈbrʌʃiz; (2) əv ˈrumz; (3) əv riˈleiʃnz.

**16. E.** ˈmeik ˈsentənsiz wið (1) θru:; (2) bai; (3) əˈpɔn; (4) frɔm; (5) til; (6) əˈmʌŋ.

**16. F.** ˈɑ:sk ˈkwestʃənz wið (1) wai? (2) wen? (3) wɛə? (4) hu:z? (5) witʃ? (6) hu:m?

**16. G.** igˈzɑ:mpl — ˈbrʌðə, ould: mai ˈbrʌðər iz ˈnɔt ˈould, hi iz ˈjʌŋ.

(1) dɔg, jʌŋ. (2) hændz, kli:n. (3) ˈwindou, ˈoupn. (4) ˈfɑ:ðə, ˈouldə. (5) ˈpensl, ʃɔ:t. (6) ˈwɔ:tə, kould. (7) dʒein, əˈsli:p. (8) ˈhenri, mæn.

**16. H.** it iz ðə ˈ19θ əv ˈmei. ˈwɔt iz ðə ˈdeit (1) in ˈˈθri: ˈˈdeiz? (2) in ə ˈˈwi:k? (3) in ˈˈtwelv ˈˈdeiz? (4) in ə ˈˈmʌnθ? (5) in ˈˈsiks ˈˈwi:ks?

**16. I.** ˈæd 11 tu 9, 23, 3, 48, 2, 64, 77, 88.

## 17. ðə ˈfeis.

ðə ˈhɛər ɔn ðə ˈhed ˈsʌmtaimz ˈtʃein(d)ʒiz ˈkʌlə, wen ə ˈmæn biˈkʌmz ˈould; it wəz (wɔz+) ˈˈbraun ɔ ˈˈblæk ˈwʌns (ət ˈwʌn ˈtaim), ˈnau it iz ˈˈwait, laik ðə ˈsnou ɔn ðə ˈhed əv ə ˈmauntin. hi hæd[1] ˈˈθik ˈhɛə ˈwʌns, nau it iz ˈˈθin. ðə ˈhɛər iz ɔn ðə ˈhed; ðə ˈˈfɔrid iz ˈðæt ˈpɑ:t əv ðə ˈfeis witʃ iz biˈni:θ ðə ˈhɛə. ˈˈwɛər iz jɔ: ˈfɔrid? ˈput jɔ: ˈhænd ɔn jɔ: ˈfɔrid.

wi ˈsi: wið auər ˈˈaiz; ðei ə ˈblæk, ˈbraun, ˈgrei ɔ ˈblu:. wi hæv ə ˈˈrait ˈai ənd ə ˈˈleft ˈai. wen wi ər ʌnˈhæpi, ðə ˈˈtiəz ˈsʌmtaimz ˈkʌm intu auər ˈaiz; wi ˈˈkrai. wen wi ər əˈsli:p, auər ˈaiz ə ˈˈʃʌt. hæv ju ˈˈgud ˈˈaiz? ˈjes, ai kən (kæn+) ˈsi: ˈwel; bət ai hæv ə ˈfrend hu ˈˈkænɔt ˈsi:; hi iz ˈkwait ˈˈblaind. it ˈmeiks mi ʌnˈhæpi tu ˈsi: ə ˈblaind ˈmæn.

wi ˈi:t ənd ˈspi:k wið auə ˈˈmauθ.

ˈˈwitʃ ˈpɑ:t əv ðə ˈmauθ du ai ˈju:z wen ai ˈsei "p"? ju ju:z ˈˈbouθ ˈˈlips. ənd wen ai ˈsei "f"? ˈðen ju ˈju:z ðə ˈˈlouə ˈˈlip ənd ði ˈˈʌpə ˈˈti:θ.

---

+ strɔŋ fɔ:m. [1] wi:k fɔ:m — həd.

wen ai ˈspi:k, ju kən ˈhiə wɔt ai ˈsei, ju ˈhiə mai ˈwə:dz. ju ˈju:z jɔ:r ˈiəz fə ˈhiəriŋ. ju ˈkænɔt ˈhiə ˈwel, if ju ˈput jɔ: ˈhændz əˈgenst jɔ:r ˈiəz. ðouz hu ˈkænɔt ˈhiə ɑ: ˈdef. wi ˈlʌv tu ˈhiə ðə ˈsɔŋz əv ðə ˈbə:dz.

ˈwɔt iz in ðə ˈmidl əv jɔ: ˈfeis? ðə ˈnouz; ju kən ˈsmel wið jɔ: ˈnouz.

ˈwɔt iz biˈni:θ jɔ:r ˈaiz? ðə ˈtʃi:ks ɑ: biˈni:θ ðəm. wen wi ə ˈwel, ðei ə ˈred; wen wi ə ˈnɔt, ðei ə ˈpeil.

ˈwɔt iz biˈni:θ jɔ: ˈmauθ? ðə ˈɪʃin. wi ˈkænɔt ˈɔ:lwəz ˈsi: ðə ˈtʃin ənd ði ˈʌpə ˈlip, biˈkɔ:z ðei ə ˈsʌmtaimz ˈkʌvəd wið ˈhɛə. ˈðis wi ˈkɔ:l ə ˈbiəd; bət if it iz ˈounli ɔn ði ˈʌpə ˈlip, it iz ˈkɔ:ld ə məˈstɑ:ʃ. ən ˈould ˈmænz ˈbiəd ənd məsˈtɑ:ʃ wə (wə:⁺) ˈbraun ɔ ˈblæk ˈwʌns; ðei ə ˈwait ˈnau.

ˈprɔvə:bz: ˈbig ˈwə:dz ˈseldəm ˈgou wið ˈgud ˈdi:dz.
ˈfɔ:r ˈaiz si: ˈmɔ: ðən ˈtu:.

**17. B.** (1) ˈwen ə jɔ:r ˈaiz ˈʃʌt? (2) ˈhu:z ˈaiz ər ˈɔ:lwəz ˈʃʌt? (3) ˈdʌz it ˈmeik ju ˈhæpi tu ˈsi: ðə ˈblɔsmz ɔn ə ˈtʃeritri:? (4) ˈhu: hæz ə ˈbiəd? (5) ˈput jɔ: ˈfiŋgər ɔn jɔ: ˈrait ˈtʃi:k. (6) ˈhu:z ˈsɔŋz kən wi ˈhiər in ˈspriŋ? (7) ˈwen kən wi ˈsmel ðə ˈrouziz? (8) ˈwen du ðə ˈtiəz ˈkʌm intu auər ˈaiz? (9) ˈwɔt iz biˈni:θ ðə ˈnouz? (10) ˈhau meni ˈlips ˈhæv ju? (11) ˈhau meni ˈti:θ? (12) ɔn ˈwitʃ ˈlip iz ðə məsˈtɑ:ʃ ? (13) kən ˈeni əv ju ˈnɔt ˈhiə ˈwel? (14) ɑ: ðɛə ˈmeni ˈmauntinz in ˈiŋgləndˈ? (15) ˈwɔt iz ˈɔ(:)fn ɔn ə ˈveri ˈgreit ˈmauntin? (16) ˈwɔt du wi ˈdu: wið auə ˈmauθ?

---

⁺ strɔŋ fɔ:m.

(17) ˈwɔt iz laik ˈsnou? (18) ˈhu: iz laik ˈtɔm? (19) ˈkæn ju ˈsi: ˈθiŋz ˈwel wen ðɛər iz ə ˈlɔg?

**17. C.** ˈdrɔ: ə ˈbig ˈfeis ɔn ˈpeipə, ənd ˈneim ðə ˈpɑ:ts əv ðə ˈfeis.

**17. D.** ˈwə:dz əv ðə ˈseim ˈfæmili. igˈzɑ:mpl — (ai) siŋ, (ə) sɔŋ.

(1) ˈhæpi; (2) hɔt; (3) lʌv; (4) dʌst; (5) wud; (6) dai; (7) raip; (8) sli:p; (9) dain; (10) ˈiŋgliʃ; (11) du:; (12) ˈðju:ti.

**17. E.** igˈzɑ:mpl —ˈhæpi, ˈhæpinis; ˈlʌvli, —; ˈdə:ti,—.

**17. F.** igˈzɑ:mpl — tu ˈkrai, hi ˈkraiz, hi iz ˈkraiiŋ.

(1) tu ˈput; (2) tu ˈdu:; (3) tu ˈtʃein(d)ʒ; (4) tu ˈfri:z; (5) tu ˈsit; (6) tu ˈkʌm; (7) tu ˈgou; (8) tu ˈlai.

**17. G.** igˈzɑ:mpl — ðə ˈbɔi: ðə ˈjʌŋ ˈbɔiz ər in ðə ˈgɑ:dn.

(1) ðə ˈli:f; (2) ðə brɑ:n(t)ʃ; (3) ðə ˈtu:θ; (4) ðə ˈtʃaild; (5) ðə ˈtʃeri; (6) ðə ˈben(t)ʃ; (7) ðə ˈhaus.

**17. H.** ˈɔpəzits: (1) wait, (2) ˈlouə, (3) ˈseldəm, (4) big, (5) mɔ:, (6) θik, (7) ˈhæpi, (8) əˈsli:p, (9) fɛə, (10) wi:k.

# KEY TO THE PRONUNCIATION

# HÄÄLDAMISÕPETUS.

Inglise keele sõnade hääldamise märkimiseks on raamatus tarvitatud Rahvusvahelise Foneetika-ühingu hääldamismärke. Et eraldada hääldamismärke nendega tihti kokkusattuvaist tavalistest kirjatähtedest, on tarbekorral hääldamismärgid asetatud nurksulgudesse, näit. man [mæn].

Märk [:] tähendab, et eelnevat vokaali tuleb hääldada pikalt. Kahe- või enamasilbistes sõnus on sõnarõhk tähendatud märgiga ['], mis asetseb rõhutatava silbi ees. Lauseseoses eriti rõhutatavad silbid on märgitud kahekordse rõhumärgiga ["] silbi ees, näit.: [ðə ˈfə:st sʌn iz ˈˈtɔm, ðə ˈsekənd iz ˈˈhenri]. Märk [*] tähendab, et tavalises õigekirjas sõna lõpul olevat r-i tuleb hääldada, kui sõnale (ilma pausita) järgneb vokaaliga algav sõna, näit. [ˈfɑ:ðə*; ðə ˈfɑ:ðər iz əˈmæn].

## I. Vokaalid (täishäälikud).

Vokaale liigitatakse eesvokaalideks ja tagavokaalideks selle järgi, kas keel asetseb häälda-misel suhteliselt ees- või tagapool. Neile lisanduvad inglise keele nn. keskvokaalid, kus keele asend on vahepealne võrreldes ees- ning tagavokaalidega.

Selle järgi, kui kõrgele keel hääldamisel tõuseb, eraldatakse kõrgeid, poolkõrgeid, poolmadalaid ja madalaid vokaale.

Ülevaate inglise keele vokaalidest annab järgmine tabel:

| | Eesvokaalid. | Keskvokaalid. | Tagavokaalid. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Kõrged . . . . | i: | | u: |
| | i | | u |
| Poolkõrged . . | e | ə: | o |
| Poolmadalad . | ɛ | ə | ɔ: |
| | | | ɔ |
| Madalad . . . | æ | ʌ | |
| | | a | ɑ: |

**Juhatusi nende vokaalide hääldamiseks.**

A. Üksikud vokaalid.

[**i**:] Hääldatakse umbes samuti kui eesti pikk **ii**, (nii, riit).

Näiteid: see [si:], sleep [sli:p], eat [i:t].

[**i**] a) Rõhulises silbis peaaegu nagu lühike eesti **i** (mis, sina), kuigi mitte nii teravakõlalisena.

Näit.: pin [pin], king [kiŋ], give [giv].

b) Rõhutus silbis kõlab inglise [i] eesti **i**- ja **e**-vahelise ebaselge vokaalina.

Näit.: very ['veri], houses ['hauziz], belong [bi'lɔŋ].

[**e**] Nagu lühike eesti **e** (vend, tema).

Näit.: pen [pen], head [hed], many ['meni].

[ɛ] Eesti **ä**-taoline häälik, mis esineb inglise keeles ainult diftongi [ɛə] alghäälikuna (vt. allapoole).

[æ] Sarnaneb eesti **ä**-ga (mänd), kuid hääldatakse suurema kõneorganite pingutusega. Õige hääldamise saavutamiseks tuleb suu hästi avada, ühtlasi suunurgad veidi tahapoole tõmmata (nagu naeruks).

Näit.: apple ['æpl], man [mæn].

[a] Eesti lühikese **a** (naine, laud) taoline häälik, mis esineb inglise keeles üksnes diftongide [ai] ja [au] alghäälikuna (vt. allapoole).

[ɑ:] Eesti pika **aa** (maa, raam) sarnane vokaal, kuid veidi tumedama kõlaga (keel veidi tahapoole tõmmatud).

Näit.: grass [grɑ:s], ask [ɑ:sk], part [pɑ:t], father ['fɑ:ðə*].

[ɔ] Tahapoole tõmmatud, kuid madalal-asuva keelega ja hästi-avatud suuga hääldatud lühike **o**-häälik. Võrreldes eesti lühikese **o**-ga on inglise [ɔ] kõlaliselt lähedal tumedale **a**-le, ja nii tuletab inglise nimi Tom [tɔm] hääldamises meelde eesti sõna „tamm".

Näit.: dog [dɔg], hot [hɔt], body ['bɔdi], wash [wɔʃ].

[ɔ:] Nagu eelmine häälik, ainult pikk. Küll ei ole pika [ɔ:] hääldamisel keel nii madalas ja suu nii palju avatud kui lühikese [ɔ] juures, kuid siiski ei tohi teda samastada eesti pika **oo**-ga (noor, pool).

Näit.: corner ['kɔ:nə*], all [ɔ:l], draw [drɔ:].

[o] Eesti **o** taoline häälik, mis esineb inglise keeles peamiselt diftongi [ou] alghäälikuna (vt. allapoole).

[u] Eesti lühikese **u** taoline häälik (kus, hulk).

Näit.: put [put], bush [buʃ], book [buk], foot [fut].

[u:] Eesti pika **uu** taoline häälik (tuul, tuum).

Näit.: food [fu:d], moon [mu:n], blue [blu:].

[ʌ] Peaaegu eesti lühike **a**-häälik (kapp, kamm), ainult tumedakõlalisem.

Näit.: sun [sʌn], shut [ʃʌt], come [kʌm], money ['mʌni].

Märkus: Tuleb hoiduda seda häälikut samastamast eesti **õ**-ga. Ennem tuletagu inglise sõna cup [kʌp] meelde eestikeelset sõna „kapp" kui sõna „kõpp".

[ə:] Eesti pikast **öö**-häälikust (pöörlema) erineb inglise [ə:] sellega, et inglise hääliku juures huuled ei ole ümmardatud, vaid peavad olema lamedad (nagu eesti **i** hääldamisel). Ka on selle hääliku juures hammastevaheline avaus äärmiselt väike, teda võib (harjutuseks) hääldada isegi kokkusurutud hammastega.

Näit.: girl [gə:l], turn [tə:n], her [hə:*].

[ə] Ainult rõhutamatuis silpides esinev ebaselge häälik, millel puudub kindel kõlavärving. Eesti sõnus on ka rõhutamatuis silpides võimalik vahet teha näit. **a** ja **e** ja **u** vahel (kavand, teisend, usund), inglise rõhutut häälikut aga hääldatakse niivõrd „laisalt" ja kõneorganeid pingutamata, et ta kuuldub ebamäärase, kõlalt umbes eesti **ä** ja **ö** vahelise häälikuna. Pealegi on see vokaal tavaliselt väga lühike.

Näit.: England ['iŋgləndˌ], paper ['peipə*], alone [ə'loun], consonant ['kɔnsənənt].

### B. Diftongid (kaksikvokaalid).

[ai] Sarnaneb eesti diftongiga **ai** (lai, taim).

Näit.: time [taim], blind [blaind], my [mai], lie [lai].

[au] Sarnane eesti diftongiga **au** (auk, laud). Esimene häälik peab olema heledakõlaline, kuigi mitte samane eesti **ä**-ga.

Näit.: house [haus], mouse [maus], cou [kau], now [nau], town [taun]. Tuleb tingimata teha piinlikult vahet diftongide [au] ja [ou] vahel (vt. allapoole).

[ei] Umbes nagu eesti **ei** (sein, teine), ainult **i** on ebaselgem, kuna **e** tundub pikemana.

Näit.: name [neim], make [meik], day [dei], sail [seil].

[ɔi] Erineb eesti diftongist **oi** (poiss, koi) samuti nagu inglise [ɔ] erineb eesti lühikesest **o**-häälikust (vt. ettepoole).

Näit.: boy [bɔi], noise [nɔiz].

[ou] tumedakõlalisele **o**-häälikule järgneb lühike **u**-häälik. Nii tekib diftong, mis erineb eesti diftongist **ou** (proua, soust), kõlades veidi **õu** lähedasena.

Näit.: no [nou], old [ould], soap [soup], grow [grou].

Märkus: Tuleb hoiduda seda diftongi samastamast eesti **õu**-ga (nõu, lõug). Häälik [o] esineb inglise keeles üksi vaid harva, rõhutamatus silbis, näit. november [no'vembə*].

[ɛə] Eesti **ä**-taolisele häälikule järgneb ebaselge häälik [ə]. Diftong [ɛə] kõlab peaaegu nagu eesti **ää**, kui ainult lõpphäälikut mitte selgelt hääldada.

Näit.: hair [hɛə*], bear [bɛə*], there [ðɛə*], parents ['pɛərənts].

[iə] Lühikesele **i**-le järgneb ebaselge häälik [ə].

Näit.: hear [hiə*], dear [diə*], here [hiə*].

[uə] Lühikesele **u**-le järgneb ebaselge häälik [ə].

Näit.: poor [puə], sure [ʃuə].

Lisamärkus diftongidele: Kui diftongidele [ai], [au] ja [ou] järgneb ebaselge [ə], siis tekivad kolmikvokaalid [aiə], [auə] ja [ouə].

Näit.: fire ['faiə*], tired ['taiəd]; our ['auə*], flower ['flauə*]; lower ['louə*].

## II. Konsonandid (kaashäälikud).

Ülevaate inglise keele konsonantidest annab järgmine tabel.

Jaotus hääldamiskoha järgi.

| Jaotus hääldamisviisi järgi. | Huul-häälikud | Hammas-häälikud | Lagi-häälikud | Kõri-häälik |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sulghäälikud | p, b | t, d | k, g | — |
| Ninahäälikud | m | n | ŋ | — |
| Külghäälik | — | l | — | — |
| Piluhäälikud | f, v | θ, ð; s, z; ʃ, ʒ; r | — | h |
| Poolvokaalid | w | — | j | — |

Märkus: Konsonandid **p, t, k, f, θ, s, ʃ** ja **h** on helitud, teised on aga helilised.

### Juhatusi inglise keele konsonantide hääldamiseks.

1. Tuleb teha selget vahet heliliste ja helitute konsonantide vahel. Eesti keeles on küll olemas helilisi konsonante (**m, n, l**), kuid meil puuduvad vastavad helitud konsonandid. (Kui näit. hääldaksime helitut

m-i, siis peaksime lihtsalt suud kinni hoides läbi nina õhku välja puhuma). Inglise keeles leiame neli pilu-häälikute ja kolm sulghäälikute paari, kus helitu konsonandi kõrval on olemas vastav heliline konsonant.

2. [**p b, t d, k g**].

Inglise helitud sulghäälikud [p, t, k] moodustatakse tugevama suluga kui eesti keeles, ja rõhulises silbis selgelt kuuldava pahvatusega sulghääliku järel (umbes $p^h$, $t^h$, $k^h$).

Näit.: paper ['peipə*], table ['teibl], cat [kæt]. Seevastu helilised sulghäälikud [b, d, g] peavad kõlama tõeliselt helisevalt, „laulvalt", mitte nagu eesti (helitud) **b, d, g**.

Näit.: boy [bɔi], day [dei], give [giv]; baby ['beibi], bad [bæd], dog [dɔg].

Märkus: Ülalantud seletustele lisaks peab mainima, et inglise sulghäälikud [t] ja [d] erinevad vastavatest eesti häälikutest ka sellega, et nende hääldamisel keeleots ei ulatu nii ette ega puuduta ülahambaid, vaid igemeid, sellega häälikule omapärase tumeda kõla andes. See käib ka ninahääliku [n] kohta, kus see vahe aga nii oluline ei ole.

3. [**f v**]. Samuti selget vahet tuleb teha helitu [f] ja helilise [v] vahel. Niihästi [v] kui ka [f] hääldamisel on alumine huul surutud ülemise hambarea vastu, kuid [v] hääldamisel peavad häälepaelad värisema (just nagu lauldes), kuna [f] juures kuuldub vaid helitu vihisemine. Võrreldes eesti v-ga (vend, talv) on inglise [v] selgem ja kõlavam.

Näit.: very [ˈveri], live [liv], river [ˈrivə*]. Inglise [f] on samane eesti keeles võõrsõnus esineva f-häälikuga (fakt, tüüfus), kui seda energiliselt hääldada.

Näit.: full [ful], laugh [lɑ:f], offer [ˈɔfə*].

4. [s z]. Helitu [s] ja heliline [z] erinevad just samuti kui [f] ja [v]. Eesti keeles tõeline heliline [z]-häälik ei esine, kuigi me mõnes võõrsõnas (zooloogia) tarvitame kirjatähte z, mida ka vastavalt peaks hääldatama. Tõeliselt helilist [z]-häälikut on aga hõlpus harjutada, püüdes järele aimata sääse suminat „zzz...“. Ka võime õige helilise [z] saavutada, kui mõnes üldtuntud võõrsõnas (basaar, horisont, hasart) püüame s-tähte võõrapäraselt, „laulvalt“ hääldada.

Näit.: lazy [ˈleizi], easy [ˈi:zi], boys [bɔiz], sings [siŋz].

Helitut konsonanti [s] on kerge hääldada, ainult ta peab kõlama teravamalt eesti s-ist, peaaegu nagu eesti ss.

Näit.: sea [si:], yes [jes], grass [grɑ:s], face [feis], cent [sent], grocer [ˈgrousə*].

5. [ʃ ʒ] Konsonandid [ʃ] ja [ʒ] erinevad samuti sellega, et esimene on helitu ja teine heliline. Kuigi mõlemad häälikud on eesti keelele võõrad, esinevad nad meil üldtuntud võõrsõnus, kus neid märgitakse vastavalt tähtedega š ja ž [šeff, brošüür, tušš; žürii, süžee, loož]. Küll aga tuleb inglise sõnus häälikute [ʃ] ja [ʒ] vahel piinlikumalt vahet teha, kui eesti keeles tavaline.

Näit.: a) fish [fiʃ], ship [ʃip], preposition [prepəˈziʃ(ə)n]; b) pleasure [ˈpleʒə*], treasure [ˈtreʒə*], usual [ˈju:ʒuəl].

6. [tʃ dʒ] Ülalkirjeldatud häälikud [ʃ, ʒ] esinevad sageli konsonantühendeis [tʃ] ja [dʒ]. Need häälikud esinevad eesti keeles üldtuntud võõrsõnus, kus neid märgitakse vastavalt tš ja dž (tšekk, tšello; džungel, pidžaama). Selgemalt kui see tavaline eesti keeles, tuleb teha vahet inglise keeles helitu [tʃ] ja helilise [dʒ] vahel.

Näit.: a) chin [tʃin], catch [kætʃ], picture ['piktʃə*]; b) jam [dʒæm], gentleman ['dʒentlmən], page [peidʒ].

7. [θ ð]. Piluhäälikud [θ] ja [ð] erinevad teineteisest täpsalt samuti nagu [f] ja [v] või [s] ja [z], s. o. esimene neist on helitu, teine heliline.

Häälikute [θ] ja [ð] hääldamisel moodustub pilu ülemiste hammaste ja keeleotsa vahel. Keeleots asetseb ülemise hambarea ääres, hambad peavad olema veidi irevil (kuna [s] ja [z] hääldamisel nad on koos). Kui nüüd puhume, siis saame helitu hammashääliku [θ]. Kui aga „laulda" s. o. (lasta häältepaeltel väriseda), siis saame helilise hammashääliku [ð]. On kasulik harjutada peegli ees, kusjuures [θ] ja [ð] hääldamisel peab olema keeleots näha; esialgseks harjutuseks võib keeleots mõlema hambarea vahelt koguni natuke välja ulatuda.

Näit.: a) thin [θin], Arthur ['ɑ:θə*], mouth [mauθ]; b) father ['fɑ:ðə*], this [ðis], with [wið].

8. [ŋ]. Lagihäälik [ŋ] on heliline nasaal, mis esineb ka eesti keeles (vang, vanker, kus talle aga alati järgneb sulghäälik. Inglise sõnus sing [siŋ], long [lɔng] aga sellele ninahäälikule ei järgne hääldamises mingit

sulghäälikut, küll aga sõnus finger ['fiŋgə*] või drink [driŋk].

9. [r]. Eesti **r** on heliline värihäälik, mille kujundamisel keeleots väriseb õhuvoolu tungides suuavausest välja. Inglise [r] on aga piluhäälik, kusjuures keeleots ei hakka värisema, vaid häälik tekib õhuvoolu hõõrumisel igemete ja läheduses asuva keeleotsa vahel. Sellest siis tuleb, et inglise [r] kõlaliselt teataval määral läheneb [ʒ] (eesti ž) häälikule, eriti ühendeis br, dr, gr. Näit.: bread [bred], dry [drai], grow [grou]. Ühenduses helitute sulghäälikutega kaotab [r] oma helilisuse, ja ühendeis pr, tr, kr [r] läheneb kõlaliselt helitule häälikule [ʃ] (eesti š), näit.: present ['preznt], tree [tri:], cry [krai].

Märkus: Kirjatähte **r** hääldatakse konsonandina inglise sõnus ainult siis, kui talle järgneb vokaal, konsonantide ees või sõna lõpul aga **r** jääb hääldamata. Näit.: red [red], very ['veri]; part [pɑ:t], paper ['peipə*].

10. [l] Kirjatähega l tähendatakse inglise keeles kahte veidi erinevat konsonanti, millist vahet küll käesolevas raamatus erinevate hääldamismärkidega ei tähistata. Vokaali ees kõlab inglise [l] umbes samuti kui eesti l (linn, laps).

Näit.: live [liv], yellow ['jelou], blue [blu:].

Konsonandi ees või sõna lõpul kõlab inglise [l] tumedalt; selle hääldamisel keele keskmine osa moodustab lohu, mis konsonandile annab tumeda (õ-taolise) kõrvalkõla.

Näit.: table ['teibl], fall [fɔ:l], milk [milk].

11. [j] Inglise „poolvokaali“ [j] hääldatakse nagu eesti j (jalg, juba).

Näit.: yes [jes], you [ju:], useful ['ju:sf(u)l].

12. [w] Inglise „poolvokaal“ [w] on lühike u-häälik, mis esineb ainult vokaalide ees (just nagu [j] on konsonandina tarvitatav i-häälik). Tuleb meeles pidada, et inglise [w] moodustatakse ainult mõlema huule lähendamise teel (mitte huule ja hammaste kokkupuutel, nagu v), kusjuures keele asend on samane kui vokaali **u** juures.

Näit.: we [wi:], well [wel], wife [waif], quarter ['kwɔ:tə*], quite [kwait].

Märkus: Poolvokaali [w] hääldavad mõned inglased ka helitult, kui õigekirjas sõna algab tähtühendiga **wh**. Seda häälikut märgitakse hääldamismärgiga [hw].

Näit.: which [(h)witʃ], what [(h)wɔt], when [(h)wen].

13. Konsonantide [m] ja [h] hääldamine mingeid seletusi ei vaja, sest et meil on eesti keeles olemas neile vastavad häälikud.

Näit.: a) man [mæn], come [kʌm], summer ['sʌmə*]; b) house [haus], home [houm], behind [bi'haind].

## INGLISE KEELE TÄHESTIK.

Aa [ei], Bb [bi:], Cc [si:], Dd [di:], Ee [i:], Ff [ef], Gg [dʒi:], Hh [eitʃ], Ii [ai], Jj [dʒei], Kk [kei], Ll [el], Mm [em], Nn [en], Oo [ou], Pp [pi:], Qq [kju:], Rr [ɑ:(r)], Ss [es], Tt [ti:], Uu [ju:], Vv [vi:], Ww ['dʌblju:], Xx [eks], Yy [wai], Zz [zed].

# VOCABULARY

# VOCABULARY

# INGLISE-EESTI SÕNASTIK.

Sõnad on antud õpperaamatus esinemise järjekorras, ning tähestikuline sõnaregister leidub eraldi raamatu lõpus. Sõnade hääldamise tähendamiseks tarvitatud foneetiliste märkide seletus on antud eelnevas *Hääldamisõpetuses.* Kui on antud mitu hääldamiskuju, siis esimesel kohal seisab rõhuline (ehk pikk) hääldamine, järgnevalt on aga antud sõna rõhutamata (lühendatud) hääldamine tavalises lauseseoses. Märk ~ tähendab, et antud inglise-keelset sõna tuleb korrata, näit.: **in** — sees; ~ **the house** — majas (= **in the house**).

**A First English Book** [ə ˈfəːst ˈiŋgliʃ ˈbuk] esimene inglise keele raamat.
**Preface to the Fourth Edition** [ˈprefis tu ðə ˈfɔːθ iˈdiʃ(ə)n] eessõna neljandale trükile.
**names** [neimz] nimed.
**for boys** [fə ˈbɔiz] poistele.
**for girls** [fə ˈgəːlz] tüdrukutele, tütarlastele.
**family names** [ˈfæmili ˈneimz] perekonnanimed.
**first part** [ˈfəːst ˈpaːt] esimene jagu.

**1. one** [wʌn] üks.
**first** [fəːst] esimene.
**lesson** [ˈlesn] õppetund, õppepala.
**Tom** [tɔm]
**Henry** [ˈhenri]
**Mary** [ˈmɛəri]
**Jane** [dʒein]
**a** [ei, ə] umbmäärane artikkel (konsonandiga algava sõna ees).
**boy** [bɔi] poiss.
**girl** [gəːl] tütarlaps, tüdruk.
**is** [iz, z] on [ainsus].
**who** [hu(ː)] kes ?
**what** [(h)wɔt] mis ?
**he** [hi(ː)] tema (meessoost).
**she** [ʃi(ː)] tema (naiss.).
**are** [aː*, ə*] oled, oleme, olete, on (mitmus).
**you** [ju(ː)] teie (tarvit. ka puuduva „sina“ asemel).
**I** [ai] mina.

**am** [æm, əm, m] olen.
**and** [ænd, ənd, ən] ja (sidesõna).
**we** [wi(:)] meie.
**they** [ðei] nemad.
**man** [mæn] mees.
**woman** ['wumən] naine.
**the** [ði:, ði, ðə] määrav artikkel. Hääldatakse [ði] vokaaliga ja [ðə] konsonandiga algava sõna ees.
**father** ['fɑ:ðə*] isa.
**mother** ['mʌðə*] ema.
**noun** [naun] nimisõna.
**substantive** ['sʌbstntiv] nimisõna.
**indefinite** [in'definit] umbmäärane.
**article** ['ɑ:tikl] artikkel.
**definite** ['definit] määrav.
**singular** ['siŋgjulə*] ainsus.
**plural** ['pluərəl] mitmus.
**pronounce** [prə'nauns] hääldа(ge).

**2. two** [tu:] kaks.
**second** ['sekənd] teine.
**has** [hæz, həz, əz, z] omab; tal on.
**have** [hæv, həv, əv, v] omama; mul, sul, meil, teil, neil on.
**yes** [jes] ja(h).
**son** [sʌn] poeg.
**no** [nou] ei.
**daughter** ['dɔ:tə*] tütar.
**or** [ɔ(:)*, ə*] või, ehk.
**not** [nɔt, nt] mitte.
**child** [tʃaild] laps.
**too** [tu:] ka.
**verb** [və:b] pöördsõna.
**pronoun** ['prounaun] asesõna.

**3. three** [θri:] kolm.
**third** [θə:d] kolmas.
**children** ['tʃildr(ə)n] lapsed.
**his** [hiz] tema (oma), omastav asesõna (meess.).
**her** [hə(:)*] tema (oma), omastav asesõna (naiss.).
**house** [haus] *pl.* **houses** ['hauziz] maja.
**live** [liv] elama.
**in** [in] sees; ~ *the house* majas.
**big** [big] suur.
**but** [bʌt, bət] aga, kuid.
**small** [smɔ:l] väike.
**very** ['veri] väga.
**it** [it] tema (asjas.).
**do** [du(:)] tegema; ~ *you live?* kas sa elad?
**where** [(h)wɛə*] kus? kuhu?
**all** [ɔ:l] kõik.
**there** [ðɛə*] seal, sinna.
**does** [dʌz, dəz] teeb.
**an** [æn, ən] umbmäärane artikkel (vokaaliga algava sõna ees).
**adjective** ['ædʒiktiv] omadussõna.
**preposition** [prepə'ziʃ(ə)n] eessõna.
**conjunction** [kən'dʒʌŋkʃ(ə)n] sidesõna.

**4. four** [fɔ:*] neli.
**fourth** [fɔ:θ] neljas.
**twice** [twais] kaks korda.
**how** [hau] kuidas.
**many** ['meni] palju (tarvit. nimisõnaga mitmuses).
**how many** kui palju? mitu?
**only** ['ounli] ainult.
**parents** ['pɛərənts] vanemad [isa ja ema).
**love** [lʌv] armastama.
**their** [ðɛə*, ðə*] nende (oma), omastav asesõna.
**work** [wə:k] töötama; *they do not* ~ nad ei tööta.
**for** [fɔ(:)*, fə*] eest, jaoks; ~ *the children* laste eest.
**play** [plei] mängima.

**garden** ['gɑ:dn] aed.
**see** [si:] nägema.
**now** [nau] praegu, nüüd; *they are working* ~ nad on töötamas praegu, töötavad parajasti.
**whom** [hu:m] keda? *with* ~ kellega? *for* ~ kellele, kelle eest?
**with** [wið] -ga (kellegagi); ~ *Mary* Mary'ga.
**learn** [lə:n] õppima.
**Margaret** ['mɑ:grit]
**William** ['wiljəm]
**English** ['iŋgliʃ] inglise keel, inglise
**what boys** millised (missugused) poisid.
**picture** ['piktʃə*] pilt.
**England** ['iŋgləndˌ] Inglismaa.
**accusative** [ə'kju:zətiv] sihitav.
**of** [ɔv, əv, v] omastavat käänet moodustav eessõna; *the accusative of who* sihitav sõnast *who*.
**present** ['preznt] olevik.
**negative** ['negətiv] eitav.
**participle** ['pɑ:tisipl] kesksõna, partitsiip.
**infinitive** [in'finitiv] infinitiiv, teosõna; *to work* töötama, töötada.
**example** [ig'zɑ:mpl] näide.

**5. five** [faiv] viis.
**fifth** [fifθ] viies.
**plus** [plʌs] pluss, (arvule) juurde lisada.
**there is** ['ðɛər 'iz, ðər 'iz, 'ðɛəz] on, on olemas (ainsus).
**there are** ['ðɛər 'ɑ:*, ðər 'ɑ:*, 'ðɛərə*] on, on olemas (mitmus).
**say** [sei] ütlema; **says** [sez] ütleb.
**this** [ðis] see.
**my** [mai] minu.
**your** [jɔ(:)*, jə*] teie (oma), sinu.
**that** [ðæt] too, see seal.
**brother** ['brʌðə*] vend.
**good** [gud] hea.
**to** [tu(:), tə] eessõna; ~ *me* minule.
**me** [mi(:)] mind, minule.
**our** ['auə*] meie (oma).
**us** [ʌs, əs] meid, meile; *all of* ~ meie kõik.
**so** [sou] nii.
**them** [ðem, ðəm, ðm] neid, neile.
**much** [mʌtʃ] palju (nimisõnaga ainsuses); *very* ~ väga.
**her** [hə(:)*] teda, temale (naiss.).
**dog** [dɔg] koer.
**Jack** [dʒæk]
**him** [him] teda, temale (meess.).
**ask** [ɑ:sk] küsima.
**sister** ['sistə*] õde.
**question** ['kwestʃ(ə)n] küsimus.
**answer** ['ɑ:nsə*] *v.* vastama, *n.* vastus.
**behind** [bi'haind] taga.
**tree** [tri:] puu.
**nominative** ['nɔm(i)nətiv] nimetav.
**genitive** ['dʒenitiv] omastav.
**personal** ['pə:s(ə)n(ə)l] isikuline.

**6. six** [siks] kuus.
**sixth** [siksθ] kuues.
**family** ['fæmili] perekond; *a* ~ *of six* kuueliikmeline perekond.
**leg** [leg] jalg.
**arm** [ɑ:m] käsivars, käsi.
**walk** [wɔ:k] kõndima.
**lie** [lai] lamama.
**on** [ɔn] peal (eessõna).
**grass** [grɑ:s] rohi.
**often** ['ɔ(:)fn] sageli.
**by** [bai] kõrval (eessõna); ~ *the house* maja kõrval.
**stand** [stænd] seisma.
**eat** [i:t] sööma.
**biscuit** ['biskit] kuivik.

**food** [fu:d] toit.
**give** [giv] andma.
**because** [bi'kɔ:z] sellepärast et.
**dative** ['deitiv] alaleütlev.
**draw** [drɔ:] joonistama.

**7. seven** ['sevn] seitse.
**seventh** ['sevnθ] seitsmes.
**week** [wi:k] nädal.
**day** [dei] päev.
**weekday** äripäev.
**Sunday** ['sʌndi] pühapäev.
**other** ['ʌðə*] teine, teised.
**name** [neim] nimi.
**call** [kɔ:l] hüüdma; *she is ~ ed* teda hüütakse.
**Monday** ['mʌndi] esmaspäev.
**Tuesday** ['tju:zdi] teisipäev.
**then** [ðen] siis.
**Wednesday** ['wenzdi] kolmapäev.
**tell** [tel] ütlema, nimetama.
**Thursday** ['θə:zdi] neljapäev.
**Friday** ['fraidi] reede.
**Saturday** ['sætədi] laupäev.
**which** [(h)witʃ] missugune, milline.
**all day** kogu (terve) päev.
**part** [pa:t] osa.
**morning** ['mɔ:niŋ] hommik, hommikupoolik.
**afternoon** [a:ftə'nu:n] õhtupoolik.
**at** [æt, ət] ees sõna.
**school** [sku:l] kool; *at ~* koolis; *to ~* kooli; *go to ~* koolis käima.
**when** [(h)wen] millal, kunas?
**go** [gou] minema, käima.
**imperative** [im'perətiv] käskiv kõneviis.
**past** [pa:st] minevik; *~ participle* mineviku kesksõna.
**etc.** = et cetera [et'setrə, it'setrə] ja nii edasi.

**8. eight** [eit] kaheksa.
**eighth** [eitθ] kaheksas.
**room** [ru(:)m] tuba.
**wall** [wɔ:l] sein.
**corner** ['kɔ:nə*] nurk.
**door** [dɔ:*] uks.
**into** ['intu, 'intə] sisse; *~ the room* tuppa.
**by** [bai] kaudu; *~ the door* ukse kaudu.
**open** ['oupn] *v.* avama; *a.* avatud, lahti.
**some** [sʌm, səm] mõni, mõned.
**more** [mɔ:*] rohkem, enam; *~ than* enam kui.
**than** [ðən] kui (keskvõrde järel).
**window** ['windou] aken.
**several** ['sevrəl] mitu.
**shut** [ʃʌt] *a.* suletud, kinni.
**why** [(h)wai] miks? mispärast?
**air** [ɛə*] õhk.
**come** [kʌm] tulema; *~ in* sisse tulema.
**through** [θru(:)] läbi.
**also** ['ɔ:lsou] ka.
**light** [lait] valgus.
**sun** [sʌn] päike.
**shine** [ʃain] paistma.
**night** [nait] öö; *at ~* öösi.
**no** [nou] eitav sõna; *have we ~ light?* kas meil ei ole valgust?
**moon** [mu:n] kuu (taevakeha).
**less** [les] vähem.
**little** ['litl] vähe (nimisõnaga ainsuses).
**some** natuke; *~ light* (natuke) valgust.
**positive** ['pɔzitiv] algvõrre.
**comparative** [kəm'pærətiv] keskvõrre.
**cp.** = **compare** [kəm'pɛə*] võrdle.

**9. nine** [nain] üheksa.
**ninth** [nainθ] üheksas.
**time** [taim] kord; *three ~ s* kolm korda.

**Mr.** = **Mister** ['mistə*] härra.
**John** [dʒɔn].
**Robinson** ['rɔbinsən].
**Grace** [greis].
**uncle** ['ʌŋkl] onu, lell; tädimees.
**Miss** [mis] preili.
**aunt** [*a*:nt] tädi; onu-, lellenaine.
**whose** [hu(:)z] kelle.
**Edith** ['i:diθ].
**Agnes** ['ægnis].
**Frank** [fræŋk].
**these** [ði:z] need (siin).
**cousin** ['kʌzn] onu-, lelle-, tädipoeg, -tütar; nõbu.
**Mrs.** = **Mistress** ['misiz] proua.
**nephew** ['nevju(:)] venna-, õepoeg.
**niece** [ni:s] venna-, õetütar.
**Arthur** ['*a*:θə*].
**J.** [dʒei].
**W.** ['dʌblju:].
**young** [jʌŋ] noor; *he is* ~; *so are you* tema on noor; sina kah (samuti ka sina).
**quite** [kwait] täitsa, üsna, päris.
**old** [ould] vana.
**wife** [waif] naine, abikaasa.
**grandparents** ['græn(d)pɛər(ə)nts] vanavanemad.
**grandmother** ['græn(d)mʌðə*] vanaema.
**husband** ['hʌzbənd] mees, abikaasa.
**grandfather** ['græn(d)fa:ðə*] vanaisa.
**grandchild** ['græn(d)tʃaild] lapselaps.
**grandson** ['græn(d)sʌn] poja-, tütrepoeg.
**granddaughter** ['græn(d)dɔ:tə*] poja-, tütretütar.
**relation** [ri'leiʃ(ə)n] sugulane.

**10. ten** [ten] kümme.
**tenth** [tenθ] kümnes.
**hand** [hænd] käsi.
**each** [i:tʃ] kumbki, iga(üks).
**finger** ['fiŋgə*] sõrm.
**both** [bouθ] mõlemad.
**use** [ju:z] tarvitama, kasutama.
**useful** ['ju:sf(u)l] kasulik.
**when** [(h)wen] (siis) kui.
**write** [rait] kirjutama; *writing* kirjutamine. *for writing* kirjutamiseks.
**pen** [pen] sulg.
**ink** [iŋk] tint.
**lead** [led] (sea-)tina.
**pencil** ['pensl] pliiats.
**hold** [hould] hoidma.
**dirty** ['də:ti] määrdunud.
**wash** [wɔʃ] pesema.
**water** ['wɔ:tə*] vesi.
**soap** [soup] seep.
**clean** [kli:n] puhas.
**copy-book** ['kɔpibuk] vihik.
**read** [ri:d] lugema.
**book** [buk] raamat.
**desk** [desk] pult, koolilaud.
**sit** [sit] istuma.
**bench** [ben(t)ʃ] pink.
**table** ['teibl] laud.
**chair** [tʃɛə*] tool.
**those** [ðouz] nood, need seal.
**opposite** ['ɔpəzit] vastand.

**11. eleven** [i'levn] üksteistkümmend.
**eleventh** [i'levnθ] üheteistkümnes.
**three times a day** kolm korda päevas.
**meal** [mi:l] söömaaeg, söök.
**breakfast** ['brekfəst] hommikueine, pruukost.
**middle** ['midl] keskpaik.
**dinner** ['dinə*] lõuna(söök); *to have* ~ lõunat sööma.
**dine** [dain] lõunastama, lõunat sööma.

**evening** ['i:vniŋ] õhtu.
**supper** ['sʌpə*] õhtusöök.
**schoolroom** ['sku:lru(:)m] koolituba, klass.
**dining-room** ['dainiŋ ru(:)m] söögituba.
**cook** [kuk] *v.* keetma; *n.* keetja (kokk, köögitüdruk).
**kitchen** ['kitʃin] köök.
**fire** ['faiə*] tuli.
**weather** ['weðə*] ilm.
**cold** [kould] külm.
**winter** ['wintə*] talv.
**short** [ʃɔ:t] lühike.
**long** [lɔŋ] pikk.
**season** ['si:zn] aastaaeg.
**year** [jə:*, jiə*] aasta.
**spring** [spriŋ] kevad.
**next** [nekst] järgmine.
**summer** ['sʌmə*] suvi.
**hot** [hɔt] kuum, palav.
**always** ['ɔ:lw(e)iz, 'ɔ:lwəz] alati.
**autumn** ['ɔ:təm] sügis.
**lunch(eon)** ['lʌn(t)ʃ((ə)n)] lõunane eine, lõunaoode.
**here** [hiə*] siin, siia.

**12. twelve** [twelv] kaksteist.
**twelfth** [twelfθ] kaheteistkümnes.
**dozen** ['dʌzn] tosin.
**twenty** ['twenti] kakskümmend.
**half** [ha:f] pool.
**quarter** ['kwɔ:tə*] veerand.
**hour** ['auə*] tund.
**sometimes** ['sʌmtaimz] mõnikord.
**cloud** [klaud] pilv.
**sleep** [sli:p] magama.
**bed** [bed] voodi.
**wake** [weik] ärkama.
**up** [ʌp] üles.
**clock** [klɔk] kell; *seven o'* ~ kl. 7.
**a. m.** ['ei'em] enne lõunat.
**Latin** ['lætin] ladina (keel).
**time** [taim] aeg.
**from** [frɔm, frəm] eessõna; ~ *eight* kaheksast.
**till** [til] kuni, -ni.
**past** [pa:st] peale, pärast, mööda.
**noon** [nu:n] lõuna, keskpäev.
**after** ['a:ftə*] peale, pärast.
**home** [houm] kodu; *go* ~ koju minema; *at* ~ kodus.
**if** [if] kui; tingimusel, et.
**work** [wə:k] töö.
**first** [fə:st] enne, esiteks.
**drink** [driŋk] jooma.
**cup** [kʌp] tass.
**tea** [ti:] tee (jook).
**bread** [bred] leib.
**butter** ['bʌtə*] või.
**p. m.** ['pi:'em] pärast lõunat.
**long** [lɔŋ] kaua.
**asleep** [ə'sli:p] magamas; *we are* ~ me magame.
**awake** [ə'weik] ärkvel.
**before** [bi'fɔ:*] enne.

**13. thirteen** ['θə:'ti:n] kolmteist.
**number** ['nʌmbə*] arv, number.
**fourteen** ['fɔ:'ti:n] neliteist.
**fifteen** ['fif'ti:n] viisteist.
**sixteen** ['siks'ti:n] kuusteist.
**seventeen** ['sevn'ti:n] seitseteist.
**eighteen** ['ei'ti:n] kaheksateist.
**nineteen** ['nain'ti:n] üheksateist.
**add** [æd] lisama, lisandama, liitma.
**thirty** ['θə:ti] kolmkümmend.
**forty** ['fɔ:ti] nelikümmend.
**fifty** ['fifti] viiskümmend.
**sixty** ['siksti] kuuskümmend.
**seventy** ['sevnti] seitsekümmend.
**eighty** ['eiti] kaheksakümmend.
**ninety** ['nainti] üheksakümmend.
**hundred** ['hʌndrid] sada; (alati umbmäärase artikli või mõne arvsõnaga).
**count** [kaunt] lugema (arve), loendama.

**figure** ['figə*] arv.
**minute** ['minit] minut.
**date** [deit] daatum, kuupäev.
**twentieth** ['twentiiθ] kahekümnes.
**month** [mʌnθ] kuu (ajajaotus).
**January** ['dʒænjuəri] jaanuar.
**snow** [snou] lumi.
**ground** [graund] maa(pind).
**cover** ['kʌvə*] katma.
**white** [(h)wait] valge (värvus).
**February** ['februəri] veebruar.
**rain** [rein] *n.* vihm; *v.* (vihma) sadama.
**except** [ik'sept] väljaarvatud.
**leap-year** ['li:p jə:*, -jiə*] liigaasta.
**March** [ma:tʃ] märts.
**flower** ['flauə*] lill.
**warm** [wɔ:m] soe.
**April** ['eipr(ə)l] aprill.
**bird** [bə:d] lind.
**sing** [siŋ] laulma.
**green** [gri:n] roheline.
**walk** [wɔ:k] *n.* jalutus(käik).
**May** [mei] mai.
**lovely** ['lʌvli] armas, kaunis.
**out of doors** välja(s).
**cool** [ku:l] jahe, vilu.
**June** [dʒu:n] juuni.
**rose** [rouz] roos.
**bloom** [blu:m] õitsema.
**end** [end] lõpp, ots.
**cherry** ['tʃeri] kirss.
**ripe** [raip] küps, valmis.
**colour** ['kʌlə*] värvus, värv.
**red** [red] punane.
**black** [blæk] must (värvus).
**fruit** [fru:t] (puu-)vili.
**cherry-tree** ['tʃeri tri:] kirsipuu.
**proverb** ['prɔvə:b] vanasõna.
**without** [wi'ðaut] ilma, -ta.
**thorn** [θɔ:n] okas.
**14. July** [dʒu'lai] juuli.
**heat** [hi:t] kuumus, palavus.
**great** [greit] suur.
**corn** [kɔ:n] (tera-)vili.
**no longer** mitte enam.
**yellow** ['jelou] kollane.
**August** ['ɔ:gəst] august.
**become** [bi'kʌm] muutuma, saama (milleks).
**September** [səp'tembə*] september.
**still** [stil] veel, ikkagi, siiski.
**ripen** ['raipn] valmima, küpsema.
**apple** ['æpl] õun.
**apple-tree** ['æpltri:] õunapuu.
**pear** [pɛə*] pirn.
**pear-tree** ['pɛətri:] pirnipuu.
**plum** [plʌm] ploom.
**plum-tree** ['plʌmtri:] ploomipuu.
**blossom** ['blɔsəm] õis.
**October** [ɔk'toubə*] oktoober.
**mist** [mist] (kerge) udu.
**fog** [fɔg] (paks) udu.
**November** [no'vembə*] november.
**December** [di'sembə*] detsember.
**fall** [fɔ:l] langema, kukkuma.
**before** [bi'fɔ:*] enne kui.
**throw** [θrou] viskama, pilduma.
**snowball** ['snoubɔ:l] lumepall.
**melt** [melt] sulama.
**soon** [su:n] varsti, pea.
**freeze** [fri:z] külmetama, külmuma; *it is freezing* külmetab.
**ice** [ais] jää.
**thick** [θik] paks.
**skate** [skeit] uisutama.
**friend** [frend] sõber.
**thin** [θin] õhuke, peenike.
**wet** [wet] märg.
**Christmas** ['krisməs] jõulud.
**New Year** ['nju:'jə:*, -jiə*] uusaasta.
**birthday** ['bə:θdei] sünnipäev.

**elder** ['eldə*] vanem (vendadest, õdedest või aukraadilt).

**15. how** [hau] kuidas.
**leaf** [li:f] *pl.* **leaves** [li:vz] leht.
**change** ['tʃein(d)ʒ] muutma, muutuma.
**brown** [braun] pruun.
**wood** [wud] mets.
**beautiful** ['bju:tif(u)l] ilus, kaunis.
**strong** [strɔŋ] tugev.
**wind** [wind] tuul.
**blow** [blou] puhuma.
**upon** [ə'pɔn] peal(e).
**another** [ə'nʌðə*] teine.
**branch** [brɑ:n(t)ʃ] oks.
**dead** [ded] *a.* surnud.
**however** [hau'evə*] aga, kuid.
**evergreen** ['evəgri:n] igihaljas.
**same** [seim] sama.
**grow** [grou] kasvama; muutuma, saama.
**make** [meik] tegema, valmistama.
**meadow** ['medou] aas.
**among** [ə'mʌŋ] seas, hulgas.
**weak** [wi:k] nõrk.
**die** [dai] surema.
**water** ['wɔ:tə*] *v.* kastma.
**happy** ['hæpi] õnnelik.
**happiness** ['hæpinis] õnn.
**beauty** ['bju:ti] ilu.

**16. thing** [θiŋ] asi.
**wood** [wud] puu (aine), puit.
**and so on** ja nii edasi.
**etc.** = **et cetera** [et'setrə, it'setrə] ja nii edasi.
**blackboard** ['blækbɔ:d] (klassi-) tahvel.
**wooden** ['wudn] puust.
**board** [bɔ:d] tahvel, laud (plank).
**paint** [peint] maalima, värvima.
**paper** ['peipə*] paber.
**chalk** [tʃɔ:k] kriit.
**clean** [kli:n] *v.* puhastama.
**duster** ['dʌstə*] tolmulapp, tahvlilapp.
**dusty** ['dʌsti] tolmune.
**dust** [dʌst] tolm.
**coat** [kout] kuub.
**brush** [brʌʃ] *n.* hari; *v.* harjama.
**well** [wel] hästi.
**maid** [meid] (teenija-) tüdruk.
**broom** [bru:m] põrandahari, luud.
**any** ['eni] mingi(sugune).
**kind** [kaind] liik.
**toothbrush** ['tu:θbrʌʃ] hambahari.
**tooth** [tu:θ] *pl.* **teeth** [ti:θ] hammas.
**hairbrush** ['hɛəbrʌʃ] juuksehari.
**hair** [hɛə*] juus (juuksed).
**head** [hed] pea (kehaosa).
**fair** [fɛə*] hele, blond.
**light** [lait] *a.* hele, valkjas.
**dark** [dɑ:k] tume.
**adverb** ['ædvə:b] määrsõna.
**interrogative** [intə'rɔgətiv] küsiv.
**relative** ['relətiv] siduv (asesõna).
**word** [wə:d] sõna.
**sentence** ['sent(ə)ns] lause.

**17. face** [feis] nägu.
**was** [wɔz, wəz] olin, oli.
**once** [wʌns] kord.
**like** [laik] sarnane, nagu.
**mountain** ['mauntin] mägi.
**had** [hæd, (h)əd, d] mul, sul, tal jne. oli.
**forehead** ['fɔrid] otsaesine.
**beneath** [bi'ni:θ] allpool, all.
**put** [put] panema, asetama.
**eye** [ai] silm.
**grey** [grei] hall.
**blue** [blu:] sinine.
**right** [rait] parem, parempoolne.
**left** [left] vasak.

**unhappy** [ʌn'hæpi] õnnetu.
**tear** [tiə*] pisar.
**cry** [krai] nutma.
**can** [kæn, kən, kn] võin, võid jne.
**cannot** ['kænɔt] (mina, sina, jne.) ei või.
**blind** [blaind] pime.
**speak** [spi:k] kõnelema, rääkima.
**mouth** [mauθ] suu.
**lip** [lip] huul.
**lower** ['louə*] alumine.
**upper** ['ʌpə*] ülemine.
**hear** [hiə*] kuulma.
**ear** [iə*] kõrv.
**against** [ə'ge(i)nst] vastu.
**deaf** [def] kurt.
**song** [sɔŋ] laul.
**nose** [nouz] nina.
**smell** [smel] haistma.
**cheek** [tʃi:k] põsk.
**well** [wel] terve.
**pale** [peil] kahvatu.
**chin** [tʃin] lõug.
**beard** [biəd] habe.
**moustache** [məs'ta:ʃ] vurrud.
**were** [wə:*] olime, olite, olid.
**seldom** ['seldəm] harva.
**deed** [di:d] tegu.
**imperfect** [im'pə:fikt] (liht-)minevik.
**be** [bi:] olema.
**low** [lou] madal.

18. **farmer** ['fa:mə*] talunik.
**road** [roud] (maan-)tee.
**past** [pa:st] mööda.
**side** [said] külg.
**been** [bi:n] olnud; *there has ~ no rain* pole olnud vihma.
**therefore** ['ðɛəfɔ:*] sellepärast.
**dry** [drai] *a.* kuiv.
**carriage** ['kæridʒ] vanker.
**wheel** [(h)wi:l] ratas.
**men** [men] mehed.
**women** ['wimin] naised.
**Jenkins** ['dʒeŋkinz]
**farm** [fa:m] talu.
**horse** [hɔ:s] hobune.
**draw** [drɔ:] vedama.
**heavy** ['hevi] raske (kaalult).
**light** [lait] kerge (kaalult).
**that** [ðət] kes, mis (siduv asesõna).
**drive** [draiv] ajama, hobust ajama, sõitma.
**village** ['vilidʒ] küla.
**town** [taun] linn.
**along** [ə'lɔŋ] piki, mööda.
**cornfield** ['kɔ:nfi:ld] viljapõld.
**pass** [pa:s] (mööda, läbi) minema; *~ through* läbistama.
**foot** [fut] *pl.* **feet** [fi:t] jalg.
**hill** [hil] küngas, mägi.
**street** [stri:t] tänav.
**stay** [stei] viibima, peatuma; püsima.
**animal** ['æniml] loom.
**flesh** [fleʃ] (toores) liha.
**ox** [ɔks] *pl.* **oxen** ['ɔksn] härg.
**beef** [bi:f] härjaliha, veiseliha.
**meat** [mi:t] liha (-toit).
**cow** [kau] lehm.
**milk** [milk] piim.
**cheese** [tʃi:z] juust.
**sheep** [ʃi:p] *pl.* **sheep** lammas.
**little** ['litl] väike.
**lamb** [læm] (lamba)tall; *little ~* talleke.
**mutton** ['mʌtn] lambaliha.
**wool** [wul] vill.
**woollen** ['wuln] villane.
**most** [moust] kõige enam; *the ~ useful* kõige kasulikum.
**he who,** see **kes.**
**forward** ['fɔ:wəd] edasi (-poole).
**behind** *adv. to stay ~* maha jääma.
**superlative** [sju'pə:lətiv] ülivõrre.

**19. country** ['kʌntri] maa.
**bad** [bæd] halb, paha.
**people** ['pi:pl] rahvas, inimesed.
**pure** [pjuə*] puhas.
**here they can have** siin nad võivad saada.
**best** [best] kõige parem, parim.
**fresh** [freʃ] värske.
**egg** [eg] muna.
**hen** [hen] kana.
**lay** [lei] panema, munema.
**cock** [kɔk] kukk.
**crow** [krou] kirema.
**early** ['ə:li] vara, varakult, varajane.
**cock-a-doodle-doo** ['kɔkə'du:-dl'du:] kukuleegu!
**fowl** [faul] kanatõugu (kodu)lind.
**swim** [swim] ujuma.
**instance** ['instəns] näide; *for ~* näiteks.
**e. g.** ['i:'dʒi:, fər'instəns] näiteks.
**duck** [dʌk] part.
**goose** [gu:s], *pl.* **geese** [gi:s] hani.
**feather** ['feðə*] (linnu-) sulg.
**beak** [bi:k] nokk.
**fly** [flai] lendama.
**wing** [wiŋ] tiib.
**sparrow** ['spærou] varblane.
**better** ['betə*] parem(ini).
**swallow** ['swɔlou] pääsuke.
**its** [its] tema (oma), omastav asesõna (asjasoost).
**nest** [nest] pesa.
**under** ['ʌndə*] all(a).
**roof** [ru:f] katus.
**feed** [fi:d] toitma, söötma.
**young one** ['jʌŋwʌn] (linnu- või looma-) poeg.
**piece** [pi:s] tükk, pala.
**straw** [strɔ:] õlg (õle).
**catch** [kætʃ] (kinni) püüdma.
**worm** [wə:m] uss, tõuk.

**20. bee** [bi:] mesilane.
**cat** [kæt] kass.
**again** [ə'ge(i)n] jälle.
**near** [niə*] lähedal(e).
**bush** [buʃ] põõsas.
**take** [teik] võtma; *we ~ away* meie koristame.
**away** [ə'wei] ära.
**insect** ['insekt] putukas.
**hive** [haiv] mesipuu.
**about** [ə'baut] ümber, ringi.
**honey** ['hʌni] mesi.
**sweet** [swi:t] magus.
**jam** [dʒæm] keedis, moos.
**sugar** ['ʃugə*] suhkur.
**every** ['evri] iga; *~ morning* igal hommikul.
**pour** [pɔ:*] kallama.
**jug** [dʒʌg] kann.
**saucer** ['sɔ:sə*] alustass.
**place** [pleis] asetama.
**fond** [fɔnd] hell, õrn, armastav; *be ~ of* armastama.
**like** [laik] sallima, armastama.
**kitten** ['kitn] kassipoeg.
**such** [sʌtʃ] selline.
**soft** [sɔ(:)ft] pehme.
**climb** [klaim] ronima.
**back** [bæk] tagasi.
**tongue** [tʌŋ] keel.
**out** [aut] välja(s).
**everywhere** ['evri(h)wɛə*] igal(e) pool(e).
**one** [wʌn] keegi (umbmäärane asesõna); *~ must like* peab armastatama.
**must** [mʌst, məst, mst] pean (olen sunnitud), pead, jne.
**minus** ['mainəs] miinus, (arvust) maha arvata.
**happily** ['hæpili] *adv.* õnnelikult.

**21. mouse** [maus], *pl.* **mice** [mais] hiir.

**rat** [ræt] rott.
**yesterday** ['jestəd(e)i] eile.
**excite** [ik'sait] erutama; *an exciting time* põnev päev.
**tell** [tel] jutustama.
**about it** [ə'baut it] selle üle, sellest.
**come** [kʌm], **came** [keim], **come** [kʌm] tulema.
**bedroom** ['bedrum] magadistuba.
**say** [sei], **said** [sed], **said** ütlema.
**miow** [mjau] näu!
**do** [du:], **did** [did], **done** [dʌn] tegema; *why did she come?* miks ta tuli? *what had she done?* mida ta oli teinud?
**during** ['djuəriŋ] kestel.
**catch** [kætʃ], **caught** [kɔ:t], **caught** (kinni) püüdma.
**hole** [houl] auk.
**no one** ei keegi.
**oh** [ou] oh!
**pussy** ['pusi] kiisu.
**see** [si:], **saw** [sɔ:], **seen** [si:n] nägema.
**softly** ['sɔ(:)ftli] tasakesi, tasahilju.
**moment** ['moumənt] hetk, silmapilk.
**run** [rʌn], **ran** [ræn], **run** [rʌn] jooksma.
**bring** [briŋ], **brought** [brɔ:t], **brought** tooma.
**lay** [lei], **laid** [leid], **laid** panema.
**mat** [mæt] matt.
**as ... as** nii ... kui, *as many as that* nii palju.
**ever** ['evə*] kunagi.
**afraid** [ə'freid]; *be ~ of* kartma.
**bite** [bait] hammustama.
**sharp** [ʃɑ:p] terav.
**quickly** ['kwikli] ruttu, kärmasti.
**quick** [kwik] kiire, kärmas.
**too** [tu:] liiga.
**perfect** ['pə:fikt] täisminevik.
**pluperfect** ['plu:'pə:fikt] enneminevik.

**22. good-morning** [gud'mɔ:niŋ] tere hommikust!
**how are you?** [hau'ɑ:ju] kuidas käsi käib?
**thank** [θæŋk] tänama; *~ you!* tänan!
**been** [bi:n] käinud.
**Woodlands** ['wudləndz]
**never** ['nevə*] ei kunagi, iialgi.
**well** [wel] noh, ...
**go** [gou], **went** [went], **gone** [gɔn] minema, käima.
**leave** [li:v], **left** [left], **left** lahkuma, (maha) jätma.
**home** [houm] kodu.
**way** [wei] tee.
**you see** tead.
**and then** pealegi.
**get** [get] saama.
**nearly** ['niəli] peaaegu, ligikaudu.
**take** [teik], **took** [tuk], **taken** ['teikn] võtma; *we took over five hours* meil kulus üle viie tunni.
**over** ['ouvə*] üle.
**fine** [fain] ilus.
**last** [lɑ:st] viimane.
**tell** [tel], **told** [tould], **told** jutustama, ütlema.
**fox** [fɔks] rebane.
**rabbit** ['ræbit] kodujänes.
**bear** [bɛə*] karu.
**story** ['stɔ:ri] jutt, lugu.
**know** [nou], **knew** [nju:], **known** [noun] teadma, tundma, oskama.
**ask** [ɑ:sk] paluma.
**glad** [glæd] rõõmus.
**that** [ðæt, ðət] et.

**hungry** ['hʌŋgri] näljane.
**thirsty** ['θə:sti] janune.
**give** [giv], **gave** [geiv], **given** ['givn] andma.
**plenty** ['plenti] rohkesti.
**drink** [driŋk], **drank** [dræŋk], **drunk** [drʌŋk] jooma.
**look** [luk] vaatama.
**ever so** üliväga.
**full** [ful] täis.
**pond** [pɔnd] tiik.
**clear** [kliə*] selge.
**fish** [fiʃ] *pl.* **fish** *or* **fishes** kala.
**fall** [fɔ:l], **fell** [fel], **fallen** ['fɔ:ln] kukkuma, langema.
**deep** [di:p] sügav.
**make** [meik], **made** [meid], **made** tegema, valmistama.
**man** [mæn] mees, sulane.
**drive** [draiv], **drove** [drouv], **driven** ['drivn] ajama, sõitma, sõidutama.
**do tell me!** jutusta mulle ometi!
**all right** ['ɔ:l'rait] hea küll.
**place** [pleis] paik, koht.
**hunger** ['hʌŋgə*] nälg.
**sauce** [sɔ:s] kaste; *hunger is the best* ~ nälg on kõige parem kokk.
**thirst** [θə:st] janu.
**take** viima.
**four-footed** ['fɔ:futid] neljajalgne.

**23. bushy** ['buʃi] kohev.
**tail** [teil] saba.
**please** [pli:z] palun, ole hea.
**go on** edasi minema, jätkama.
**as** [æz, əz] kuna, kui.
**carry** ['kæri] kandma.
**bag** [bæg] kott, paun; (jahimehe-, kalamehe-) saak.
**how do you do** ['hau d(u) ju 'du:] tere!
**lot** [lɔt] hulk; *what a* ~ *(of)* kui palju.
**suppose** [sə'pouz] oletama, arvama.
**fish** [fiʃ] *v.* kalastama.
**dear** [diə*] kallis, armas; *oh* ~ oh jumaluke!
**alone** [ə'loun] üksi.
**easy** ['i:zi] kerge.
**for sest, sest et.**
**sit** [sit], **sat** [sæt], **sat** istuma.
**bite** [bait], **bit** [bit], **bitten** ['bitn] hammustama.
**draw** [drɔ:], **drew** [dru:], **drawn** [drɔ:n] tõmbama, vedama.
**good-bye** [gud'bai] jumalaga.
**before long** varsti, peagi.
**fall asleep** uinuma, magama jääma
**indeed** [in'di:d] tõesti.
**freeze** [fri:z], **froze** [frouz], **frozen** ['frouzn] külmuma, külmetama.
**whole** [houl] terve, kogu.
**wake** [weik], **woke** [wouk], **waked** [weikt] *or* **woke** [wouk] ärkama, äratama.
**something** ['sʌmθiŋ] midagi.
**pull** [pul] *v.* kiskuma, tõmbama; *n.* tõmme; *he gave another* ~ ta tõmbas veel kord.
**sure** [ʃuə*] kindel.
**jerk** [dʒə:k] jõnks.
**crash** [kræʃ] raks.
**poor** [puə*] vaene.
**just** [dʒʌst] just.
**apostrophe** [ə'pɔstrəfi] ülakoma, apostroof.
**awake** [ə'weik] *v.* = wake.

**24. spend** [spend], **spent** [spent], **spent** veetma, mööda saatma.
**wish** [wiʃ] *v.* soovima.

**return** [ri'tə:n] tagasitulek; *many happy ~ s of the day* palju õnne sünnipäevaks.
**present** ['preznt] kingitus.
**cut** [kʌt], **cut, cut** lõikama, niitma.
**heap** [hi:p] kuhi, hunnik.
**hay** [hei] hein.
**game** [geim] mäng.
**indoors** ['in'dɔ:z] sisse, tuppa; sees, toas.
**bough** [bau] oks.
**maple** ['meipl] vaher.
**shall** [ʃæl, ʃ(ə)l] tuleviku abiverb 1-es pöördes; *what ~ we do?* mis me teeme? (tulevikus).
**will** [wil] tuleviku abiverb 2-es ja 3-es pöördes; *I ~ read you a story* ma (heameelega) loen teile ühe loo.
**exclaim** [iks'kleim] hüüdma.
**what shall it be?** mis peab see olema?
**interesting** ['intrestiŋ] huvitav.
**fetch** [fetʃ] (minema ja) tooma.
**page** [peidʒ] leheküIg.
**contents** ['kɔntents] sisu, sisukord.
**hear** [hiə*], **heard** [hə:d], **heard** kuulma.
**themselves** [ðəm'selvz] endid (nemad).
**comfortable** ['kʌmf(ə)təbl] mugav.
**read** [ri:d], **read** [red], **read** [red] lugema.
**tale** [teil] jutt, lugu.
**while** [(h)wail] sel ajal kui.
**self** [self] ise.
**self-done** ['self'dʌn] ise-tehtud.
**to-day** [tə'dei] täna.
**to-morrow** [tə'mɔrou] homme.
**future** ['fju:tʃə*] tulevik.
**return** [ri'tə:n] *v.* taastulema, uuesti tulema.
**contain** [kən'tein] sisaldama.
**comfort** ['kʌmfət] *v.* tröösti ma, lohutama; *n.* lohutus.
**wish** [wiʃ] *n.* soov.

**25. once upon a time** kord (muistsel ajal).
**respectable** [ris'pektəbl] lugupidamisväärne; *most ~* üliväga lugupidamisväärne.
**smooth** [smu:ð] sile.
**bright** [brait] särav.
**anything** ['eniθiŋ] mingi (asi).
**life** [laif] elu.
**least** [li:st] vähim, kõige vähem; *at ~* vähemalt.
**own** [oun] oma.
**enough** [i'nʌf] küllalt.
**marry** ['mæri] abielluma.
**serious** ['siəriəs] tõsine.
**ordinary** ['ɔ:din(ə)ri] harilik, tavaline.
**mighty** ['maiti] võimas, vägev.
**but** (= except) väljaarvatud; *no one ~* ei keegi muu kui.
**world** [wə:ld] maailm.
**wise** [waiz] (elu)tark.
**son-in-law** ['sʌninlɔ:] väimees.
**rather** ['rɑ:ðə*] kaunis, üsna.
**reply** [ri'plai] *v.* kostma, vastama.
**obliged** [əb'laidʒd] tänu võlgnev; *I am much ~* olen väga tänulik.
**offer** ['ɔfə*] *v.* pakkuma.
**beloved** [bi'lʌv(i)d] armastatud, kallis.
**choose** [tʃu:z], **chose** [tʃouz], **chosen** ['tʃouzn] valima.
**of course** [(ə)f 'kɔ:s] muidugi.
**I see** mõistan, saan aru.
**wrong** [rɔŋ] vale; *you are ~* te eksite.
**reply** [ri'plai] *n.* vastus; *make ~* kostma, vastama.
**earth** [ə:θ] maa, muld.

**think** [θiŋk], **thought** [θɔ:t], **thought** mõtlema.
**true** [tru:] õige.
**blow** [blou], **blew** [blu:], **blown** [bloun] puhuma.
**tear** [tɛə*], **tore** [tɔ:], **torn** [tɔ:n] rebima, kiskuma.
**nothing** ['nʌθiŋ] mitte midagi.
**until** [ʌn'til] kuni.
**right** [rait] õige; *you are ~* sul on õigus.
**speak** [spi:k], **spoke** [spouk], **spoken** ['spoukn] kõnelema, rääkima.
**wisdom** ['wizdəm] (elu-)tarkus.
**handsome** ['hæn(d)səm] kena, ilus.
**perhaps** [pə'hæps, præps] võibolla.
**alive** [ə'laiv] elus.
**respect** [ris'pekt] *v.* lugu pidama, austama; *n.* lugupidamine, austus.
**might** [mait] võim.
**offer** ['ɔfə*] *n.* pakkumine.
**speech** [spi:tʃ] kõne.
**marriage** ['mæridʒ] abiellumine, abielu.
**father-in-law** ['fa:ðərinlɔ:] äi.
**mother-in-law** ['mʌðərinlɔ:] ämm.
**brother-in-law** ['brʌðərinlɔ:] õemees, naise- (mehe-) vend.
**sister-in-law** ['sistərinlɔ:] vennanaine, naise- (mehe-) õde.
**daughter-in-law** ['dɔ:tərinlɔ:] minia.
**conjugate** ['kɔn(d)ʒugeit] (verbi) pöörama.

**26. Sandy Bay** ['sændi 'bei] kohanimi; *sandy* liivane, *bay* laht.
**keep** [ki:p], **kept** [kept], **kept** pidama, hoidma; *~ house* maja pidama.
**invite** [in'vait] (külla) kutsuma.
**can** [kæn], **could** [kud] võin, võisin.
**large** [la:dʒ] suur, avar.
**the John Robinsons** J. R.'i perekond.
**turn** [tə:n] (järje-)kord.
**visit** ['vizit] külaskäik.
**pay** [pei], **paid** [peid], **paid** maksma, tasuma; *~ a visit (to)* külastama.
**busy** ['bizi] tegev, usin; *they were ~ packing* nad olid ametis pakkimisega.
**pack** [pæk] pakkima.
**jump** [dʒʌmp] kargama; *~ about* karglema.
**seaside** ['si:said] mererand.
**quiet** ['kwaiət] vaikne, rahulik.
**want** [wɔnt] tahtma.
**I am going to leave you here** ma jätan su siia.
**hope** [houp] *v.* lootma.
**leave alone** rahule jätma.
**behave** [bi'heiv] käituma.
**seem** [si:m] näima.
**understand** [ʌndə'stænd], **understood** [ʌndə'stud], **understood** mõistma, aru saama.
**come up to ...** juurde tulema.
**mistress** ['mistris] perenaine.
**look** [luk] välja nägema, näima; *~ing very good* tehes pai näo.
**trunk** [trʌŋk] kohver.
**get** [get], **got** [got], **got** saama; *they got into the carriage* nad asusid vankrisse.
**far** [fa:] kaugel(-e); *as ~ as* kuni.
**probably** ['prɔbəbli] arvatavasti.
**remember** [ri'membə*] mäletama, meelde pidama.
**dull** [dʌl] pilves, pilvine.

**shine** [ʃain], **shone** [ʃɔn], **shone** paistma.
**arrive** [ə'raiv] saabuma.
**railway** ['reilwei] raudtee.
**station** ['steiʃ(ə)n] jaam.
**porter** ['pɔ:tə*] pakikandja.
**ticket** ['tikit] pilet.
**office** ['ɔfis] kontor; *ticket* ~ piletikassa.
**buy** [bai], **bought** [bɔ:t], **bought** ostma.
**clerk** [klɑ:k] (kontori-) ametnik.
**sell** [sel], **sold** [sould], **sold** müüma.
**third return** kolmanda (klassi) edasi-tagasi (pilet).
**cost** [kɔ(:)st], **cost, cost** maksma, hinnalt väärt olema.
**shilling** ['ʃiliŋ] šilling (inglise rahaühik).
**sixpence** ['sikisp(ə)ns] kuuepenniline münt.
**sovereign** ['sɔvrin] naelaline kuldraha.
**receive** [ri'si:v] vastu võtma, saama.
**change** [tʃein(d)ʒ] vahetus, vahetusraha.
**pound** [paund] nael (sterling) — inglise rahaühik.
**penny** ['peni] *pl.* **pence** [pens] *and* **pennies** (inglise) penn.
**half-sovereign** ['hɑ:f'sɔvrin] poolenaelaline kuldraha.
**gold** [gould] kuld.
**crown** [kraun] (inglise) kroon.
**double** ['dʌbl] kahekordne, topelt.
**florin** ['flɔrin] floriin (inglise münt).
**half-crown** ['hɑ:f'kraun] poolekrooniline inglise münt.
**threepence** ['θrip(ə)ns] kolmepenniline münt.
**silver** ['silvə*] hõbe.
**half-penny** ['heip(ə)ni] poolepenniline münt.
**farthing** ['fɑ:ðiŋ] veerandpenniline münt.
**bronze** [brɔnz] pronks.
**America** [ə'merikə].
**dollar** ['dɔlə*] dollar (Ameerika rahaühik).
**cent** [sent] (Ameerika) sent.
**bill** [bil] pangatäht, paberraha.
**coin** [kɔin] münt, metallraha.
**nickel** ['nikl] nikkel.
**glitter** ['glitə*] läikima, sätendama.
**none** [nʌn] mitte ükski.
**active** ['æktiv] tegevik.
**passive** ['pæsiv] tehtavik.
**hope** [houp] *n.* lootus.
**hopeful** ['houpf(u)l] lootusrikas.
**visit** ['vizit] *v.* külastama.
**golden** ['gould(ə)n] kuldne.

27. **train** [trein] rong.
**west** [west] lääs.
**few** [fju:] vähe (nimisõnaga mitmuses); *a* ~ mõned.
**seat** [si:t] iste.
**platform** ['plætfɔ:m] jaamaesine.
**waiting-room** ['weitiŋrum] ooteruum.
**dull** [dʌl] igav.
**time-table** ['taimteibl] sõiduplaan.
**hold** [hould], **held** [held], **held** hoidma.
**string** [striŋ] nöör.
**fasten** ['fɑ:sn] kinnitama.
**collar** ['kɔlə*] krae, kaelus.
**bark** [bɑ:k] haukuma.
**fight** [fait] *n.* võitlus, kaklus.
**hard** [hɑ:d] *adv.* kõvasti, tugevasti.

**will** [wil], **would** [wud] abiverb; *Henry would not let him go* Henry ei lasknud teda lahti.
**let** [let], **let, let** laskma; ~ *go* lahti laskma.
**meanwhile** ['mi:n(h)wail] vaheajal.
**see to** hoolitsema (millegi eest).
**luggage** ['lʌgidʒ] pagas, reisupakid.
**put** [put], **put, put** panema.
**label** ['leibl] sedel, märgis.
**tip** [tip] jootraha.
**must not** ei tohi.
**mistake** [mis'teik] viga, eksitus; *make a* ~ eksima; *be sure not to make a* ~ mingil tingimusel eksida.
**was to** ['wɔz tu] pidi(n).
**by the 11.25** kella 11.25-rongiga.
**get up** üles tõusma.
**ready** ['redi] valmis.
**get in** sisse (rongile) minema.
**wait** [weit] ootama.
**behind time** hilistunult.
**find** [faind], **found** [faund], **found** leidma.
**guard** [ga:d] (rongi) konduktor.
**delighted** [di'laitid] ülirõõmus.
**separate** ['sep(ə)reit] lahutama.
**kiss** [kis] *n.* suudlus.
**move** [mu:v] liikuma.
**stand** [stænd], **stood** [stud], **stood** seisma.
**wave** [weiv] lehvitama.
**handkerchief** ['hæŋkətʃif] taskurätik.
**lap** [læp] süli.
**even** ['i:vn] isegi.
**try** [trai] katsuma, püüdma.
**dry** [drai] *v.* kuivatama.
**delight** [di'lait] *v.* rõõmustama; *n.* rõõm, õnnetunne.
**delightful** [di'laitf(u)l] ülimõnus, õnnestav.
**kiss** [kis] *v.* suudlema.
**fight** [fait] *v.* võitlema, kaklema.
**south** [sauθ] lõuna (ilmakaar).
**southern** ['sʌðən] lõunapoolne, lõuna-.
**north** [nɔ:θ] põhi (ilmakaar).
**northern** ['nɔ:ðən] põhjapoolne, põhja-.
**east** [i:st] ida.
**eastern** ['i:stən] idapoolne, ida-.
**western** ['westən] läänepoolne, lääne-.
**silent** ['sailənt] vaikne.

**28. merry** ['meri] lõbus.
**between** [bi'twi:n] vahel.
**sight** [sait] vaade, nägemine. *catch* ~ *of* silmama.
**squirrel** ['skwirl] orav.
**else** [els] muu.
**about** [ə'baut] umbes.
**sea** [si:] meri.
**round** [raund] ümber.
**ship** [ʃip] laev.
**sail** [seil] puri.
**reach** [ri:tʃ] saavutama; millegi juurde jõudma.
**once again** jälle.
**cottage** ['kɔtidʒ] majake (eriti maal).
**wash** [wɔʃ] *n.* pesemine; *have a good* ~ ennast tublisti pesema.
**journey** ['dʒə:ni] reis, teekond.
**downstairs** ['daun'steəz] alumisel(e) korral(e), all(a).
**long** [lɔŋ] igatsema.
**beach** [bi:tʃ] rand, (eriti) supelrand.
**stretch** [stretʃ] *n.* ulatus, maa-ala.
**sand** [sænd] liiv.
**hardly** ['ha:dli] vaevalt.
**stone** [stoun] kivi.

**fortunately** ['fɔ:tʃ(ə)nitli] õnneks.
**tide** [taid] tõus ja mõõn; *the ~ was out* oli mõõna aeg; *the ~ was coming in* tõus oli alanud.
**dig** [dig], **dug** [dʌg], **dug** kaevama.
**finish** ['finiʃ] lõpetama.
**the tide would soon reach them** tõus pidi peagi nendeni jõudma.
**high** [hai] kõrge.
**firm** [fə:m] kindel.
**possible** ['pɔsibl] võimalik.
**wave** [weiv] laine.
**so that** nii et.
**island** ['ailənd] saar.
**rise** [raiz], **rose** [rouz], **risen** ['rizn] tõusma.
**wet** [wet] *v.* niisutama.
**fast** [fa:st] ruttu, kiiresti.
**frighten** ['fraitn] hirmutama.
**back** [bæk] selg.
**safely** ['seifli] õnnelikult, äparduseta.
**everything** ['evriθiŋ] kõik.
**appetite** ['æpitait] isu.
**eat** [i:t], **ate** [et], **eaten** ['i:tn] sööma.
**heartily** ['ha:tili] tublisti.
**please** [pli:z] *v.* meeldima.
**pleasure** ['pleʒə*] heameel, rõõm.
**healthy** ['helθi] terve.
**trouble** ['trʌbl] mure, tüli.
**troublesome** ['trʌblsəm] tülikas.
**party** ['pa:ti] seltskond.
**get on with** läbi saama (kellegagi).
**next door** kõrvalmajas.
**whenever** [(h)wen'evə*] igakord kui.
**begin** [bi'gin], **bigan** [bi'gæn], **bigun** [bi'gʌn] algama, alustama.
**stop** [stɔp] lakkama; peatama, peatuma.
**impossible** [im'pɔsibl] võimatu.
**when the cat was about** kui kass oli läheduses.
**heart** [ha:t] süda.
**hearty** ['ha:ti] südamlik.
**health** [helθ] tervis.
**trouble** ['trʌbl] *v.* tülitama.
**stretch** [stretʃ] *v.* sirutama; ulatuma.
**fast** [fa:st] kõva, kindel; kiire.
**sail** [seil] *v.* purjetama.
**fortune** ['fɔ:tʃ(ə)n] õnn; rikkus.
**fortunate** ['fɔ:tʃ(ə)nit] õnnelik.

29. **recite** [ri'sait] deklameerima, (luuletust) ette kandma.
**poem** ['po(u)im] luuletus.
**get on** edasi jõudma.
**let us have the poem** = *let us hear the poem = give us the poem.*
**granny** ['græni] vanaemake.
**stand up** püsti tõusma.
**habit** ['hæbit] harjumus.
**stormy** ['stɔ:mi] tormine.
**quarrel** ['kwɔrl] *v.* tülitsema.
**way** [wei] viis; *this was the ~ the fight was begun* tüli alustati sel viisil.
**I *will* have that mouse!** küll ma selle hiire juba endale saan!
**sweep** [swi:p], **swept** [swept], **swept** pühkima.
**right** [rait] *adv.* täitsa.
**frost** [frɔ(:)st] härmatis.
**nowhere** ['nou(h)wɛə*] ei kuskil(e)
**lie** [lai], **lay** [lei], **lain** [lein] lamama; *~ down* maha heitma.
**down** [daun] maha, maas; all(a).
**floor** [flɔ:] põrand.

**creep** [kri:p], **crept** [krept], **crept** hiilima, roomama.
**sleep** [sli:p], **slept** [slept], **slept** magama.
**beginning** [bi'giniŋ] algus.
**beginner** [bi'ginə*] algaja.
**storm** [stɔ:m] torm.
**quarrel** ['kwɔrl] *n.* tüli, riid.
**quarrelsome** ['kwɔrlsəm] riiukas.
**by heart** [bai'ha:t] pähe, peas(t).

**30. lady-bird** ['leidibə:d] lepatriinu.
**funny** ['fʌni] naljakas, kentsakas.
**spot** [spɔt] täpp.
**turn** [tə:n] *v.* pöörama, pöörduma.
**yet** [jet] veel, siiski; *not* ~ mitte veel.
**line** [lain] rida.
**daisy** ['deizi] karikakar.
**shut** [ʃʌt], **shut, shut** sulgema.
**sleepy** ['sli:pi] unine.
**rest** [rest] puhkus; *at* ~ puhkamas.
**glow-worm** ['glouwə:m] jaaniuss.
**light** [lait] süütama.
**lamp** [læmp] lamp.
**dew** [dju:] kaste.
**speckled** ['spekld] tähniline.
**flag** [flæg] *v.* lõtvuma.
**close** [klous] *a., adv.* tihe, tihedalt.
**cling** [kliŋ], **clung** [klʌŋ], **clung** kleepuma; küljes rippuma; (kedagi) taga hoidma.
**damp** [dæmp] niiskus.
**interrupt** [intə'rʌpt] katkestama.
**mean** [mi:n], **meant** [ment], **meant** tähendama.
**explain** [iks'plein] seletama.
**wet** *n.* märgus, niiskus.
**soak** [souk] leotama, märjaks tegema.
**nice** [nais] kena, ilus; ~ *and dry* ilusasti kuiv.
**fairy** ['feəri] haldjas.
**bell** [bel] kell, kelluke.
**tinkle** ['tiŋkl] tilisema.
**afar** [ə'fa:*] kaugel.
**haste** [heist] rutt; *make* ~ ruttama.
**harness** ['ha:nis] rakendama.
**fast** [fa:st] kõvasti, kindlalt.
**cobweb** ['kɔbweb] ämblikuvõrk.
**spider** ['spaidə*] ämblik.
**Oberon** ['oubərən].
**car** [ka:*] vanker, tõld.
**were you told?** kas teile öeldi?
**darling** ['da:liŋ] lemmik.
**king** [kiŋ] kuningas.
**fairyland** ['fɛəriländ] haldjate riik, muinasmaa.
**glide** [glaid] liuglema.
**float** [flout] hõljuma.
**sleep** [sli:p] *n.* uni.
**fun** [fʌn] nali.
**rest** *v.* puhkama.
**damp** [dæmp] *a.* niiske.

**31. meet** [mi:t], **met** [met], **met** kohtama, vastu minema; *ran to* ~ *them* jooksis neile vastu.
**uncomfortable** [ʌn'kʌmf(ə)təbl] ebamugav.
**feeling** ['fi:liŋ] tunne.
**feel** [fi:l], **felt** [felt], **felt** tundma; ~ *tired* väsinud olema.
**tired** ['taiəd] väsinud.
**yours** [jɔ:z] sinu oma; *those little eyes of* ~ sinu silmakesed.
**stay up** üleval olema.
**grow** [grou], **grew** [gru:], **grown** [groun] kasvama.
**especially** [is'peʃ(ə)li] eriti.
**promise** ['prɔmis] lubama, tõotama.

**get on to** üles ronima.
**everybody** ['evribɔdi] igaüks, kõik.
**upstairs** ['ʌp'steəz] ülemisel(e) korral(e), üles, üleval.
**undress** ['ʌn'dres] lahti rõivastama.
**dress** [dres] rõivastama, (-uma).
**edge** [edʒ] serv, äär.
**voice** [vɔis] hääl.
**empty** ['emti] *v.* tühjendama; *a.* tühi.
**neck** [nek] kael.
**Auntie dear** ['a:nti 'diə*] kallis tädike.
**sing** [siŋ], **sang** [sæŋ], **sung** [sʌŋ] laulma.
**birdie** ['bə:di] linnuke.
**baby** ['beibi] lapsuke.
**peep** [pi:p] varglik pilk; *at ~ of day* päevatõusul.
**fly** [flai], **flew** [flu:], **flown** [floun] lendama.
**limb** [lim] kehaliige, (eriti) jalg.
**midnight** ['midnait] kesköö.
**direct** [d(a)i'rekt] otsene.
**indirect** ['ind(a)i'rekt] kaudne.
**promise** ['prɔmis] *n.* lubadus.
**dress** [dres] rõivas(tus).

**32. Wynken** ['wiŋkən].
**Blynken** ['bliŋkən].
**Nod** [nɔd].
**I *do* love that song** ma väga armastan seda laulu.
**go to sleep** magama jääma, uinuma.
**smile** [smail] *v.* naeratama.
**rogue** [roug] kelm.
**just** ainult.
**ask for** paluma.
**listen** ['lisn] kuulama, kuulatama.
**off** [ɔ(:)f] ära, minema, välja.
**shoe** [ʃu:] king.
**river** ['rivə*] jõgi.
**crystal** ['kristl] *n.* kristall; *a.* kristallselge.
**herring** ['heriŋ] heeringas.
**net** [net] võrk.
**laugh** [la:f] naerma.
**rock** [rɔk] õõtsuma, õõtsutama.
**speed** [spi:d], **sped** [sped], **sped** kiirustama, tagant kihutama.
**ruffle** ['rʌfl] sasima.
**star** [sta:*] (taeva-) täht.
**cast** [ka:st], **cast**, **cast** heitma.
**wherever** [(h)wɛə'evə*] kus iganes, kus (kuhu) tahes.
**afeard** [ə'fiəd] = **afraid**; *be ~* kartma. *never ~ are we* me põrmugi ei karda.
**cry** [krai] hüüdma.
**fisherman** ['fiʃəmən] kalamees.
**throw** [θrou], **threw** [θru:], **thrown** [θroun] viskama.
**twinkle** ['twiŋkl] vilkuma.
**foam** [foum] vaht.
**sky** [skai] taevas.
**pretty** ['priti] ilus.
**sail** *n.* purjetamine.
**as if** [əz 'if] just nagu; *~ it could not be* just nagu see oleks võimatu.
**folks** [fouks] = **people** inimesed, rahvas.
**dream** [dri:m] *n.* unenägu; *v.* und nägema.
**name** [neim] *v.* nimetama.
**wee** [wi:] pisike, tilluke. *a ~ one* väike laps.
**trundle** ['trʌndl] ratas, rull.
**wonderful** ['wʌndəf(u)l] imeilus.
**be** = **are** on (olemas).
**misty** ['misti] udune.
**verse** [və:s] salm.
**already** [ɔ:l'redi] juba.
**I have got** (= I have) mul on.
**smile** [smail] *n.* naeratus.

**wonder** ['wʌndə*] *n.* ime; *v.* imestama, imeks panema.

**33. letter** ['letə*] kiri.
**close** [klouz] sulgema.
**might** [mait] võiks; *you ~ like* sa vahest tahaksid.
**send** [send], **sent** [sent], **sent** saatma.
**at once** otsekohe, jalamaid.
**we are having great fun** meil on väga lõbus.
**build** [bild], **built** [bilt], **built** ehitama.
**castle** ['kɑ:sl] loss.
**grandpapa** ['grænd[d]pəpɑ:] vanapapa.
**we have not seen much of him** meie ei ole teda palju näinud.
**miss** [mis] *v.* puuduma, puuduolekut tundma; *we ~ you* meil on kahju, et sind siin ei ole.
**sorry** ['sɔri] kurb, kahetsev; *I am ~* mul on kahju.
**write** [rait], **wrote** [rout], **written** ['ritn] kirjutama.
**box** [bɔks] kast, karp; **letter ~** kirjakast.
**clear** [kliə*] tühjendama.
**slip** [slip] pistma.
**envelope** ['enviloup] ümbrik.
**stamp** [stæmp] kirjamark.
**post** [poust] postile viima.
**they were in time** nad jõudsid õigeks ajaks.
**postman** ['pous(t)mən] kirjakandja.
**unlock** ['ʌn'lɔk] lukust lahti võtma.
**lock** [lɔk] lukustama.
**drop** [drɔp] (maha) pillama, kukkuda laskma.
**decide** [di'said] otsustama.
**he had to fetch** ta pidi tooma.
**drop** [drɔp] tilk, piisk.
**glass** [glɑ:s] klaas.
**grow** minema, muutuma.
**worse** [wə:s] halvem.
**as if it were going to be** just nagu oleks tulemas.
**gallop** ['gæləp] v. galoppima, kappama, (tuhat-)neljа jooksma.
**up and down** edasi-tagasi.
**set** [set], **set, set** loojenema.
**the wind is high** tuul on tugev.
**dark** [dɑ:k] *n.* pimedus.
**ride** [raid], **rode** [roud], **ridden** ['ridn] ratsutama.
**by** [bai] *adv.* mööda.
**late** [leit] hilja.
**the fires are out** tuled on kustunud.
**aloud** [ə'laud] valjusti, valju häälega.
**loud** [laud] *a.* vali (häälest); *adv.* valjusti.
**toss** [tɔ(:)s] vintsutama.
**highway** ['haiwei] maantee.
**low** [lou] *adv.* tasa(kesi), tasasel häälel.
**gallop** ['gæləp] *n.* galopp, kapak, (tuhat-)neljajooks; *at a ~, at the ~* galopis.
**worst** [wə:st] kõige halvem.
**I may** [ai'mei] võin, tohin.
**building** ['bildiŋ] ehitus, hoone.
**American** [ə'merik(ə)n] *a.* Ameerika-; *n.* ameeriklane.

**34. guess** [ges] mõistatama, ära arvama.
**neither** ['naiðə*] — **nor** [nɔ:*] ei — ega.
**in weather like that** sellise ilmaga.
**either** ['aiðə*] — **or** [ɔ:*] kas — või.
**fill** [fil] täitma.

**pipe** [paip] piip.
**tobacco** [tə'bækou] tubakas.
**clever** ['klevə*] arukas, tark.
**sort** [sɔ:t] liik, sugu; *all ~ s of things* kõiksugu asju.
**wonder** ['wʌndə*] imestama. imeks panema; *I ~ if* ei tea kas.
**if** — kas.
**riddle** ['ridl] mõistatus.
**would you like** kas te tahaksite? kas sa tahaksid?
**only** ['ounli] ainus.
**vowel** ['vauəl] täishäälik.
**letter** ['letə*] kirjatäht.
**alphabet** ['ælfəbit] tähestik.
**Great Britain** ['greit 'brit(ə)n] Suur-Britannia.
**British** ['britiʃ] briti-.
**empire** ['empaiə*] keisririik, maailmariik.
**dominion** [də'minjən] omavalitsusega osa Briti maailmariigis.
**Canada** ['kænədə]
**consonant** ['kɔnsənənt] konsonant, kaashäälik.
**addition** [ə'diʃ(ə)n] lisamine, lisandamine.
**syllable** ['siləbl] silp.
**belong** [bi'lɔŋ] kuuluma.

---

Ülaltoodud mõistatuste lahendusis (lk. 162) esinevaid uusi sõnu:
**Noah** [no(u)ə]
**born** [bɔ:n] sündinud.
**eatable** ['i:təbl] söödav.
**round** *adv.* ümber; *a.* ümmargune.

**35. ring** [riŋ] sõrmus; **wishing ~** nõiasõrmus, mis täidab soove.
**fairy-tale** ['fɛəriteil] muinasjutt.
**gladly** ['glædli] heameelega.
**industrious** [in'dʌstriəs] usin, töökas.
**plough** [plau] kündma.
**strange** [strein(d)ʒ] võõras, tundmatu.
**like this** sedaviisi.
**straight** [streit] otse; *~ on* otse edasi.
**oak** [ouk] tamm(epuu).
**by itself** üksi.
**fell** [fel] maha raiuma, langetama.
**fortune** ['fɔ:tʃən] õnn, rikkus.
**axe** [æks] kirves.
**crash** [kræʃ] *v.* (raginal) langema.
**break** [breik], **broke** [brouk], **broken** ['broukn] murd(u)ma.
**above** [ə'bʌv] kohal(e).
**free** [fri:] vaba; *set ~* vabastama.
**reward** [ri'wɔ:d] tasuma.
**fulfil** [ful'fil] täitma.
**careful** ['kɛəf(u)l] hoolikas.
**beat** [bi:t], **beat** [bi:t], **beaten** ['bi:tn] lööma, peksma.
**start** [stɑ:t] algama, alustama; *~ed on his way home* asus koduteele.
**goldsmith** ['gouldsmiθ] kullasepp.
**costly** ['kɔ(:)stli] kallis, väärtuslik.
**shop** [ʃɔp] pood, äriruum.
**show** [ʃou], **showed** [ʃoud], **shown** [ʃoun] näitama.
**worth** [wə:θ] väärt.
**together** [tə'geðə*] koos, kokku.
**treasure** ['treʒə*] aare, kallisvara.
**bottle** ['bɔtl] pudel.
**wine** [wain] vein.
**talk** [tɔ:k] vestlema, juttu ajama.
**cleverly** osavasti.
**exactly** [ig'zæktli] täpselt.
**hasten** ['heisn] ruttama, tõttama.
**shutter** ['ʃʌtə*] aknaluuk.
**thousand** ['θauz(ə)nd] tuhat.
**scarcely** ['skɛəsli] vaevalt.
**shoulder** ['ʃouldə*] õlg (kehaosa).
**body** ['bɔdi] keha.
**bury** ['beri] matma.

**at last** lõpuks.
**bear** [bɛə*], **bore** [bɔ:*], **borne** [bɔ:n] kandma.
**weight** [weit] raskus, kaal.
**cellar** ['selə*] kelder.
**neighbour** ['neibə*] naaber.
**noise** [nɔiz] kära.
**burst** [bə:st], **burst, burst** lõhkuma, lõhkema; puhkema; ~ *open* lahti murdma.
**help** [help] *n.* abi; *v.* aitama; *they ~ed themselves (to)* nad võtsid endile.
**misfortune** [mis'fɔ:tʃ(ə)n] õnnetus.
**money** ['mʌni] raha.
**lay hands on** kätte saama.
**of a feather** ühesuguste sulgedega.
**flock** [flɔk] kogunema.
**talk** [tɔ:k] *n.* jutuajamine, vestlus.
**eatable** ['i:təbl] söödav.
**plough** [plau] *n.* ader, sahk.
**industry** ['indəstri] usinus, töökus.
**reward** [ri'wɔ:d] *n.* tasu.
**care** [kɛə*] *n.* mure, hool; *v.* muretsema, hoolitsema, hoolima.
**weigh** [wei] kaaluma.

**36. it would be** oleks.
**some more** veel natuke.
**land** [lænd] maa.
**we can do better than that** me võime sellest paremini toimida.
**able** ['eibl] võimeline; *be ~ (to)* suutma.
**harvest** ['ha:vist] lõikus.
**it would be well** oleks hea.
**jingle** ['dʒiŋgl] kõlistama.
**pocket** ['pɔkit] tasku.
**why should we** miks peaksime?
**trifle** ['traifl] tühiasi, väärtusetu asi.
**believe** [bi'li:v] uskuma.
**to be sure** tõepoolest.
**make money** raha teenima.
**persuade** [pə(:)'sweid] veenma, oma arvamusele võitma; mõjustama.
**use** [ju:s] *n.* kasu, kasutamine; *to make ~ of* kasutama.
**angry** ['æŋgri] vihane, pahane.
**used to** ['ju:stu] oli kombeks; *you ~ complain* sul oli kombeks kaevata.
**complain** [kəm'plein] kaebama, hädaldama.
**anything you please** kõik, mida sa soovid.
**go by** möödduma.
**chest** [tʃest] kirst.
**worry** ['wʌri] tüütama; *keep ~ing* ühtelugu tüütama.
**it would be easy** oleks kerge.
**bitter** ['bitə*] mõru, kibe; *regret ~ly* kibedasti kahetsema.
**regret** [ri'gret] kahetsema.
**want** vajama; ~ *badly* kibedasti vajama.
**since** [sins] sestsaadik kui.
**reasonable** ['ri:z(ə)nəbl] mõistlik.
**consider** [kən'sidə*] kaalutlema.
**what you would like me to wish** mida sa tahaksid, et ma soovin.
**reason** ['ri:zn] mõistus.
**regret** [ri'gret] *n.* kahetsus.
**anger** ['æŋgə*] viha, pahameel.

**37. wealthy** ['welθi] jõukas.
**ease** [i:z] mõnu; *at his ~* mõnusasti.
**front** [frʌnt] esikülg; *in ~ of* ees.
**smoke** [smouk] suitsetama.
**suggest** [sə'dʒest] soovitama, ette panema.
**give up** loobuma.
**altogether** [ɔ:ltə'geðə*] päriselt.
**though** [ðou] ehk küll.

**take (good) care** hoolt kandma.
**utter** ['ʌtə*] väljendama, avaldama, kuuldavale tooma.
**God** [gɔd] Jumal.
**around** [ə'raund] = **round** ümber.
**weep** [wi:p], **wept** [wept], **wept** nutma.
**they should take** nad peaksid võtma.
**remembrance** [ri'membrəns] mälestus.
**eldest** ['eldist] vanim (vendadest, õdedest või aukraadilt).
**grave** [greiv] haud.
**treasure** ['treʒə*] *v.* kalliks pidama.
**desire** [di'zaiə*] ihkama, soovima.
**boot** [bu:t] saabas; *put on ~s* saapaid jalga panema.
**shop** [ʃɔp] *v.* ostusid tegema (poes); *go ~ping* poodi minema.
**sole** [soul] *n.* tald.
**butcher** ['butʃə*] lihunik; *the butcher's* (shop) lihapood.
**loaf** [louf] päts.
**baker** ['beikə*] pagar.
**shoemaker** ['ʃu:meikə*] kingsepp.
**have them re-soled** ['ri:'sould] lasta nad tallutada.
**sole** [soul] *n.* tald, *v.* tallutama; *re-sole* uuesti tallutama (uued tallad panema).
**forget** [fə'get], **forgot** [fə'gɔt], **forgotten** [fə'gɔtn] unustama.
**post office** ['poust 'ɔfis] postkontor.
**grocer** ['grousə*] koloniaalkaupmees, vürtspoodnik.
**postcard** ['pous(t)ka:d] postkaart.
**pound** [paund] nael (kaaluühik).
**coffee** ['kɔfi] kohv.
**wealth** [welθ] jõukus, rikkus.
**desire** [di'zaiə*] *n.* ihaldus, soov.
**38. sound** [saund] *n.* hääl, kõla.
**tick** [tik] tiksuma.
**bark** [ba:k] *n.* haugatus; *gave a little ~* haugatas.
**strike** [straik], **struck** [strʌk], **struck** lööma.
**certainly** ['sə:tnli] kindlasti, igatahes.
**hammer** ['hæmə*] vasar, haamer.
**awkward** ['ɔ:kwəd] kohmakas.
**hop** [hɔp] hüppama, hüplema.
**dance** [da:ns] tantsima.
**nail** [neil] nael.
**rude** [ru:d] toores, häbematu.
**fat** [fæt] rasv.
**good-for-nothing** kõlbmatu, nurjatu.
**knock** [nɔk] koputama, taguma.
**sure enough** = **to be sure.**
**terrible** ['teribl] kohutav.
**bang** [bæŋ] mürts, kolksatus.
**the rest** [rest] ülejääk, teised.
**needle** ['ni:dl] (õmblus)nõel.
**follow** ['fɔlou] järgnema.
**thread** [θred] (õmblus)niit.
**tired** ['taiəd] väsinud, tüdinenud.
**hard work** raske töö.
**lead** [li:d], **led** [led], **led** juhtima, talutama.
**idle** ['aidl] tegevuseta, logelev.
**difficult** ['difik(ə)lt] raske.
**everyday** ['evridei] igapäevane.
**this way and that** sinna-tänna.
**ago** [ə'gou] tagasi; *long ~* juba ammu.
**wear** [wɛə*], **wore** [wɔ:*], **worn** [wɔ:n] kandma (rõivaid).
**sew** [sou] õmblema.
**have a good time** lõbutsema.
**basket** ['ba:skit] korv; *work ~* käsitöökorv.
**love** [lʌv] armastus; *make ~ to* kurameerima.
**pin** [pin] nööpnõel.

**friendly** ['frendli] sõbralik; *be ~ with* sõbrustama.
**scissors** ['sizəz] käärid.
**iron** ['aiən] raud.
**hang** [hæŋ], **hung** [hʌŋ], **hung** riputama, rippuma.

39. **clatter, rattle!** ['klætə 'rætl] killa-kolla!
**who . . . but** kes muu kui.
**round** [raund] ümmargune.
**plate** [pleit] taldrik.
**knife** [naif] *pl.* **knives** [naivz] nuga.
**fork** [fɔ:k] kahvel.
**spoon** [spu:n] lusikas.
**really** ['riəli] tõesti.
**deal** [di:l] hulk; *a (good) ~ of* palju.
**life** [laif] *pl.* **lives** [laivz] elu.
**enjoy** [in'dʒɔi] nautima; *they do not ~ themselves* neil pole lõbus olla.
**temper** ['tempə*] tuju.
**find out** avastama, teada saama.
**size** [saiz] suurus.
**figure** ['figə*] kuju.
**pudding** ['pudiŋ] puding.
**peel** [pi:l] koorima.
**potato** [p(ə)'teitou] *pl.* **potatoes** kartul.
**what is the good of you?** mis on sust kasu?
**helper** ['helpə*] abiline.
**man** (ilma artiklita) inimene.
**allow** [ə'lau] lubama; *you are not ~ed* sa ei tohi.
**porridge** ['pɔridʒ] puder.
**ought to** ['ɔ:tu] peaks (õigupoolest).
**ray** [rei] kiir.
**appear** [ə'piə*] ilmuma.
**hind legs** ['haind 'legz] tagumised jalad.
**slow** ['slou] aeglane.
**dickory, dickory, dock!** ['dikəri 'dikəri 'dɔk] tipa-tapa-tips!
**regular** ['regjulə*] korrapärane.
**irregular** [i'regjulə*] ebakorrapärane.
**joy** [dʒɔi] rõõm.
**peel** [pi:l] *n.* (õuna-, kartuli- jne.) koor.
**list** [list] nimistu, nimekiri.

40. **delightful** [di'laitf(u)l] (üli-) mõnus.
**say things (to)** sõimama.
**not at all** mitte sugugi.
**headache** ['hedeik] peavalu.
**usual** ['ju:ʒu(ə)l] harilik.
**ill** [il] haige.
**hat** [hæt] kübar.
**stick** [stik] kepp.
**cap** [kæp] müts.
**lane** [lein] põlluvaheline tee, kitsas tänav.
**shade** [ʃeid] vari.
**pleasant** ['pleznt] mõnus, meeldiv.
**butterfly** ['bʌtəflai] liblikas.
**while** [(h)wail] *n.* viivuke, natuke aega.
**brook** [bruk] oja.
**bank** [bæŋk] kallas, perv.
**watch** [wɔtʃ] vaatlema.
**shady** ['ʃeidi] varjuline.
**enter** ['entə*] sisenema, sisse astuma.
**scatter** ['skætə*] (laiali) puistama, puistuma.
**direction** [di'rekʃ(ə)n] suund.
**harm** [ha:m] häda, kahju.
**imagine** [i'mædʒin] kujutlema.
**swim** [swim], **swam** [swæm], **swum** [swʌm] ujuma.
**suddenly** ['sʌdnli] äkitselt.
**cross** [krɔ(:)s] ületama, (risti) üle minema.

**by means** [mi:nz] **of** abil.
**bridge** [bridʒ] sild.
**sunbeam** ['sʌnbi:m] päikesekiir.
**lean** [li:n] toetama (-uma).
**look for** otsima.
**fail** [feil] ebaõnnestuma, nurjuma; *they ~ed to find* neil ei läinud korda leida.
**pick** [pik] noppima.
**bud** [bʌd] pung, õienupp.
**gather** ['gæðə*] koguma, kogunema.
**beg** [beg] paluma.
**ashes** ['æʃiz] *(pl.)* tuhk.
**tin** [tin] plekktoos.
**match** [mætʃ] tulitikk.
**smoke** [smouk] suits.
**harm** [hɑ:m] *v.* kahjustama.
**harmful** ['hɑ:mf(u)l] kahjulik.

**41. lazy** ['leizi] laisk.
**Jim** [dʒim].
**James** [dʒeimz].
**Thomas** ['tɔməs].
**living** ['liviŋ] (elu-)ülespidamine.
**nothing but** ei midagi muud kui.
**turn out** välja kihutama.
**beggar** ['begə*] kerjus.
**stupid** [stju(:)pid] rumal.
**lose** [lu:z], **lost** [lɔ(:)st], **lost** kaotama.
**ought to have** oleks pidanud.
**spill** [spil], **spilt** [spilt], **spilt** (maha) loksutama.
**dear me!** heldeke, jumaluke!
**pat** [pæt] patakas, kamakas.
**happen** ['hæpn] juhtuma.
**silly** ['sili] rumal.
**fellow** ['felou] mees, poiss.
**scratch** [skrætʃ] kribima, kriimustama.
**foolish** ['fu:liʃ] rumal, lollakas.
**along** *adv.* kaasa.
**dirt** [də:t] pori, mustus.
**spoil** [spɔil], **spoilt** [spɔilt], **spoilt** rikkuma.
**fool** [fu:l] narr, loll.
**loss** [lɔ(:)s] kaotus.

**42. mill** [mil] veski.
**miller** ['milə*] mölder.
**donkey** ['dɔŋki] eesel.
**lift** [lift] tõstma.
**manage** ['mænidʒ] toime saama.
**rich** [ritʃ] rikas.
**dumb** [dʌm] tumm.
**doctor** ['dɔktə*] arst.
**somebody** ['sʌmbɔdi] keegi.
**lady** ['leidi] daam, preili.
**strange** [strein(d)ʒ] võõrastav, veider.
**burst out laughing** naerma puhkema.
**thus** [ðʌs] nii, nõnda(viisi).
**gentleman** ['dʒentlmən] isand, härrasmees.
**different** ['difrənt] erinev; *they returned a ~ way* nad tulid tagasi teist teed.
**bunch** [bʌn(t)ʃ] kimp.
**immediately** [i'mi:djətli] jalamaid, kohe.
**welcome** ['welkəm] tervitama.
**station-master** jaamaülem.
**step** [step] astuma.
**everyone** ['evriwʌn] igaüks, kõik.
**cake** [keik] kook.
**riches** ['ritʃiz] *(pl.)* rikkus.
**step** [step] *n.* aste, samm.

**43. boat** [bout] paat.
**row** [rou] sõudma.
**shore** [ʃɔ:*] rand.
**drive** [draiv] *n.* sõit; *take for a ~* sõidutama.
**mile** [mail] miil (ingl. miil = 1523 meetrit).

**you may like(to)** te vahest tahate.
**fence** [fens] tara.
**outside** ['aut'said] väljaspool, väljapoole.
**inside** ['in'said] seespool, sissepoole.
**delicate** ['delikit] õrn.
**petal** ['petəl] kroonleht, õieleht.
**surround** [sə'raund] ümbritsema.
**hide** [haid], **hid** [hid], **hidden** ['hidn] peitma, varjama.
**contented** [kən'tentid] rahul.
**towards** [tu'wɔ:dz, tɔ:dz] poole.
**lark** [la:k] lõoke.
**as if it were** nagu oleks.
**festival** ['festiv(ə)l] pidu.
**yet** siiski.
**whilst** [(h)wailst] = **while** kuna, sel ajal kui . . .
**stalk** [stɔ:k] vars.
**silence** ['sailəns] vaikus.
**reverence** ['revrəns] aukartus.
**distress** [dis'tres] *v.* kurvastama.
**grand** [grænd] tore, suurepärane.
**stiif** [stif] jäik, paindumatu.
**the less — the more** mida vähem — seda enam.
**fragrance** ['freigr(ə)ns] lõhn.
**they gave themselves airs** nad olid upsakad.
**peony** ['piəni] pojeng.
**puff** [pʌf] **out** täis puhuma.
**tulip** ['tju:lip] tulp (lill).
**so that they might be the better seen** nii et neid seda paremini nähtaks.
**notice** ['noutis] *n.* märkamine, tähelepanu; *take* ~ tähele panema, märkama.
**noble** ['noubl] õilis, suursugune.
**recover** [ri'kʌvə*] toibuma.
**ashamed** [ə'ʃeimd] häbenev, häbi tundev; *be* ~ häbenema.
**notice** ['noutis] *v.* märkama, tähele panema.
**honour** ['ɔnə*] *n.* au.
**confer** [kən'fə:*] **upon** osutama, üles näitama.
**soon after** varsti pärast seda.
**sigh** [sai] ohkama.
**it is all over with them** nendel on lõpp käes.
**thankful** ['θæŋkf(u)l] tänulik.
**fold** [fould] kokku keerama, kokku tõmbama.
**yard** [ja:d] jard (inglise pikkusmõõt = 91,4 sm).
**rod** [rɔd] ingl. pikkusmõõt (ligi 5 m).
**foot** [fut], *pl.* **feet** [fi:t] jalg (pikkusmõõt = 30,5 sm).
**inch** [in(t)ʃ] toll (pikkusmõõt = 2,54 sm).
**distress** [dis'tres] *n.* kurvastus.
**fragrant** ['freigr(ə)nt] lõhnav.
**honour** ['ɔnə*] *v.* austama.
**honourable** ['ɔnərəbl] auväärt.

**44. cheerful** ['tʃiəf(u)l] rõõmus, lõbusatujuline.
**sunshine** ['sʌnʃain] päikesepaiste.
**mournful** ['mɔ:nf(u)l] leinane, kurblik.
**alas!** [ə'la:s, ə'læs] oh häda!
**reason** ['ri:zn] põhjus.
**sadness** ['sædnis] kurbus.
**cage** [keidʒ] (linnu) puur.
**flight** [flait] lend.
**prisoner** ['priznə*] vang.
**willingly** ['wiliŋli] heameelega.
**ah** [a:] ah, oh!
**imprison** [im'prizn] vangistama.
**unable** ['ʌn'eibl] võimetu.
**all at once** = **suddenly** äkitselt, korraga.
**tremble** ['trembl] värisema.
**fear** [fiə*] kartus.

**if she were torn out** kui ta välja kistaks.
**she was to be put** ta pidi pandama.
**freedom** ['fri:dəm] vabadus, priius.
**much as she wished (to)** kuigi ta väga soovis.
**throat** [θrout] kõri.
**burn** [bə:n], **burnt** [bə:nt], **burnt** põlema, põletama.
**refresh** [ri'freʃ] värskendama, karastama.
**wither** ['wiðə*] närtsima.
**instead of** [in'sted əv] (millegi) asemel.
**blade** [bleid] **of grass** rohulible.
**remind** [ri'maind] meelde tuletama.
**Oh! that I could comfort him!** oh, kui ma võiksin lohutada teda!
**although** [ɔ:l'ðou] = **though** ehk küll.
**pant** [pænt] hingeldama.
**slender** ['slendə*] ahtake, nõrk.
**shake** [ʃeik], **shook** [ʃuk], **shaken** ['ʃeikn] raputama.
**bend** [bend], **bent** [bent], **bent** painutama, painduma.
**sad** ['sæd] kurb.
**suffer** ['sʌfə*] kannatama.
**feel for** kaasa tundma.
**sorrow** ['sɔrou] mure, kurbus.
**cheer** [tʃiə*] *v.* hõiskama, rõõmsaks tegema.
**mourn** [mɔ:n] leinama.
**prison** ['prizn] vangla.
**fear** [fiə*] *v.* kartma.
**feminine** ['feminin] naissoost (sõna).

---

**appendix** [ə'pendiks] lisa.
**capital** ['kæpitl] pealinn.
**inhabitant** [in'hæbit(ə)nt] elanik.
**abbreviation** [əbri:vi'eiʃ(ə)n] lühend.
**phonetic** [fo(u)'netik] foneetiline, hääldamis-.
**section** ['sekʃ(ə)n] lõik, osa.
**key** [ki:] võti.
**pronunciation** [prənʌnsi'eiʃ(ə)n] hääldamine.
**vocabulary** [və'kæbjuləri] sõnastik.

# TÄHESTIKULINE SÕNAREGISTER.

Numbrid viitavad vastavatele õppepaladele (Lessons), välja arvatud juhud, kus uus sõna esineb raamatu lisa-osades, millisel juhul on viidatud leheküljele (näit. *abbreviation, p.* 162). Grammatilised oskussõnad (näit. *accusative*) ja inglise keeles esinevad lühendid (näit. *a. m.*) on registris märgitud kursiivkirjaga.

Märk * viitenumbri järel tähendab, et sõna esineb vastava õppepala grammatikaosas. Täht *f. (= following)* viitenumbri järel tähendab, et sõna esineb korduvalt ka järgnevais õppepalades.

Registris on tarvitatud järgnevaid lühendeid:

| | |
|---|---|
| *a. = adjective* | *p. = page* |
| *adv. = adverb* | *pl. = plural* |
| *c. = conjunction* | *prep. = preposition* |
| *n. = noun* | *v. = verb* |


a, 1*, *f.*
abbreviation, *p.* 162.
able, 36, 42.
about, *adv.*, 20, 21; *prep.*, 21, 22, 29, *f*; 28.
above, 35.
*accusative*, 4*, *f.*
ache, 40.
*active*, 26*.
add, 13.
addition, 34.
*adjective*, 3*.
*adverb*, 16*.
afar (= far), 30.
afeard (= afraid), 32.
afraid, 21, 24, 25.
after, 12, 14, 15.
afternoon, 7, 12, 24.
again, 20, 22, 23.
against, 17, 25.
ago, 38, 40.
ah! 44.
air, 8, 13, 19.
airs (to give oneself), 43.
alas! 44.
alive, 25.
all, 3 *f.*
all at once, 44.
all (not at), 40, 41, 43.
all right! 22.

allow, 39, 40, 42.
alone, 23.
along, *prep.*, 18; *adv.*, 23, 25.
aloud, 33, 35.
alphabet, 34.
already, 32, 33, 35.
also, 8, 9, 12.
although (= though), 44.
altogether, 37, 43.
always, 11, 15, 20.
am, 1*, *f.*
*a. m.*, 12.
America, 26.
American, 33.
among, 15.
an, 3*, 4*, *f.*
and, 1, *f.*
and so on, 16, *f.*
anger, 36*, 43.
angry, 36, 38, 41.
animal, 18, 22.
another, 15, 21, 23.
answer, *v.*, 5; *n.*, 5, 25.
any, 16, 20, 21.
anything, 25.
*apostrophe*, 23*.
appear, 39, 40, 42.
appendix, *p.* 131.
appetite, 28, 40; *p.* 162.
apple, 14.
apple-tree, 14.
April, 13.
are, 1*, *f.*
arm, 6, 10.
around, *prep.*, 37, 43, 44; *adv.*, 43.
arrive, 26, 27, 28.
*article*, 1*.
as, *c.*, 23.
as... as, 21.
as if, 32, 33, 35, 43.
ashamed, 43.
ashes, 40.
ask, 5, 22, 23.
asleep, 12, 17, 23.
at, 7, 8, 10.
at last, 35.
at least, 25.
at once, 33, 35, 36.
ate, *see* eat, 28.
August, 14.
aunt, 9, 24.
Auntie, 24.
autumn, 11, 15.
awake, *a.*, 12; *v.*, 23.
away, 20, 23, 25.
awkward, 38.
axe, 35.

baby, 31, 39.
back, *adv.*, 20, 21, 24; *n.*, 28, 31, 40.
bad, 19, 33*.
bag, 23.
baker, 37, 41.
(snow)ball, 14, 20.
bang, 38.
bank, 40, 43.
bark, *v.*, 27, 28, 40; *n.*, 38.
(work) basket, 38.
bay, 26, 27.
be (to), 1*, *f.*; 17*, 18*.
beach, 28, 33, 34.
beak, 19.
beam, 40.
bear, *n.*, 22.
bear, *v.*, 35, 35*, 44.
beard, 17.
beat, 35, 35*, 44.
beaten, *see.* beat, 35.
beautiful, 15, 15*, 21*, 22.
beauty, 15*.
became, *see* become, 21.
because, 6, 11, 15.
become, 14, 15, 16, 21*.
bed, 12.
bedroom, 21.
bedtime, 31.
bee, 20.
beef, 18.
beehive, 22.
been, 18*, *f.*; (= gone) 22.
before, *prep.*, 12, 20, 23; *c.*, 14, 20; *adv.*, 29, 40, 41.
beg, 40, 40*.
began, *see* begin, 28.
beggar, 41.
begin, 28, 28*, 29, 33.
beginner, 29*.
beginning, 29.
begun, *see* begin, 28.
behave, 26, 27.
behind, *prep.*, 5, 6, 12; *adv.*, 18.
believe, 36, 39, 40.
bell, 30.
belong, 34, 36.
beloved, 25.
bench, 10, 10*, 16.
bend, 44, 44*.
beneath, 17.
bent, *see* bend, 44.
best, 19, 22, 25.
better, 19.

between, 28, 36.
big, 3, *f.*; 18*.
bill, 26.
bird, 13, 17, 19.
birdie, 31.
birthday, 14, 24.
biscuit, 6, 20.
bit, *see* bite, 23.
bite, 21, 23, 23*.
bitten, *see* bite, 23.
bitter, 36, 44.
black, 13, 16, 17.
blackboard, 16.
blade, 44.
blew, *see* blow, 25.
blind, 17.
bloom, 13.
blossom, 14.
blow, 15, 25, 25*.
blown, *see* blow, 25.
blue, 17, 44, p. 162.
board, 16, 21.
boat, 43.
body, 35, 44.
book, 10, 15, 24.
boot, 37, 40.
bore, *see* bear, 35.
born, *p.* 162.
borne, *see* bear, 35.
both, 10, 17, 18.
bottle, 35.
bough, 24, 35.
bought, *see* buy 26.
box, 33, 44.
boy, 1, *f.*
branch, 15, 15*, 22.
bread, 12.
break, 35, 35*, 44.
breakfast, 11, 12, 20.
bridge, 40.
bright, 25.
bring, 21, 21*.
Britain, Great, 34.
British, 34.
broke, *see* break, 35.
broken, *see* break, 35.
bronze, 26.
brook, 40, 41.
broom, 16.
brother, 5, 7, 9.
brother-in-law, 25*.
brought, *see* bring, 21.
brown, 15, 17.
brush, *v.*, 16; *n.*, 16.
bud, 40.
build, 33, 33*.
building, 33*.
built, *see* build, 33.
bunch, 42.
burn, 44, 44*.
burnt, *see* burn, 44.
burst, 35, 35*. 42.
burst open, 35.
burst out, 42.
bury, 35, 35*, 37, 44.
bush, 20, 20*.
bushy, 23.
busy, 26, 33, 42.
but, 3, *f.*; (= except), 25, 25*.
butcher, 37, 41.
butter, 12, 18.
butterfly, 40.
buy, 26, 26*, 36, 37.
by, *prep.*, 6, 8, 12; *adv.*, 33, 36.
by heart, 29 F.
by means of, 40.

cage, 44.
cake, 42.
call, 17, 18, 33, 40.
called (to be), 7, 9, 18.
came, *see* come, 21.
can, 17, 17*, 18, 19, 26*.
Canada, 34.
cannot, 17, 17*, 19.
can't, 36.
cap, 40.
capital, *p.*, 161.
car, 30.
care, *v.*, 35*; *n.*, 35*, 37.
careful, 35, 36, 41.
carriage, 18, 22, 27.
carry, 23, 23*.
cast, 32, 32*, 39.
castle, 33.
cat, 20, 21.
catch, 19, 21, 21*, 23.
caught, *see* catch, 21.
cellar, 35, 36.
cent, 26.
certainly, 38, 43, 44.
chair, 10, 16.
chalk, 16.
change, *v.*, 15, 15*, 17; *n.*, 26.
cheek, 17.
cheer, 44*.
cheerful, 44.
cheese, 18, 21.
cherry, 13, 13*.
cherry-tree, 13.
chest, 36.
child, 2, *f.*; 3*.
chin, 17.
choose, 25, 25*.
chose, *see* choose, 25.

chosen, *see* choose, 25.
Christmas, 14.
clatter! 39.
clean, *v.*, 16, 20; *a.*, 10, 16, 20.
clear, *a.*, 22; *v.*, 33.
clerk, 26.
clever, 34, 35.
climb, 20.
cling, 30, 30*, 31C.
clock, 12.
close, *v.*, 33, 35.
close, *a.*, *adv.*, 30, 43, 44.
cloud, 12, 13, 25.
clung, *see* cling, 30.
coat, 16, 18, 20.
cobweb, 30.
cock, 19.
cock-a-doodle-do, 19.
coffee, 37, 39.
coin, 26, 35.
cold, 11, 14, 23.
collar, 27.
colour, 13, 15, 17.
come, 8, 8*, 11, 13, 21*.
comfort, *v.*, *n.*, 24*.
comfortable, 24, 25.
*comparative*, 8*.
complain, 36, 44.
confer, 43, 43*.
conjugate, 25*.
*conjunction*, 3*.
consider, 36, 39.
consonant, 34.
contain, 24*.
contented, 43.
contents, 24.
cook, *v.*, 11, 20; *n.*, 11.
cool, 13, 22, 24.
copy-book, 10.
corn, 14.
corner, 8.
cornfield, 18.
cost, 26, 26*, 37.
costly, 35.
cottage, 28, 33, 41.
could, *see* can, 26, 26*, 28, 32, 33.
count, 13.
country, 19, *p.* 161.
course (of), 25.
cousin, 9, 22, 24.
cover, 13, 14, 15.
cow, 18.
crash! 23; *v.*, 35.
creep, 29, 29*.
crept, *see* creep, 29.
cross, 40.
crow, 19.
crown, 26.
cry (= call), 32, 33.
cry (= weep), 17, 17*, 27, 27*, 28, 41.
crystal, 32.
cup, 12.
cut, 24, 24*, 33, 43.

daisy, 30, 43, 44.
damp, *n.*, 30; *a.*, 30*.
dance, 38.
dark, *n.*, 33; *a.*, 16.
darling, 30, 33.
date, 13.
*dative*, 6.
daughter, 2, *f.*
daughter-in-law, 25*.
day, 7, 8, 11, 12.
dead, 15, 20, 21.
deaf, 17.
deal (a good), 39.
dear, 23, 25.
dear me! 41.
December, 14.
decide, 33, 36, 39.
deed, 17.
deep, 22.
*definite*, 1*.
delicate, 43, 44.
delight, *v.*, 27, 28; *n.*, 27*, 44.
delightful, 27*, 40.
desire, *v.*, 37; *n.*, 37*, 44.
desk, 10, 16.
dew, 30, 32.
did, *see* do, 21.
didn't, 22, 22*, 23.
die, 15.
different, 42.
difficult, 38, 42.
dig, 28, 28*, 44.
dine, 11, 12.
dining-room, 11.
dinner, 11.
*direct*, 31*.
direction, 40.
dirt, 41.
dirty, 10, 20, 22.
distress, *v.*, 43; *n.*, 43*.
do, 3, 3*, *f.*; 21*.
doctor, 42.
does, *see* do, 3.
dog, 5, 6, 10.
dollar, 26.
dominion, 34.
done, *see* do, 21.
donkey, 42.
don't, 5, 5*.
door, 8, 13, 21.
double, 26.
down, 29, 32, 33.
downstairs, 28, 38.

dozen, 12.
drank, *see* drink, 22.
draw (a picture), 6 C.
draw, 18, 23, 23*.
drawn, *see* draw, 23.
dream, *v.*, 32, 43; *n.*, 32, 40.
dress, *v.*, 31; *n.*, 31*, 38, 43.
drew, *see* draw, 23.
drink, 12, 22, 22*.
drive, *v.*, 18, 22, 22*, 25; *n.*, 43.
driven, *see* drive, 22.
drop, *v.*, 33, 33*; *n.*, 33, 44.
drove, *see* drive, 22.
drunk, *see* drink, 22.
dry, *v.*, 27, 27*; *a.*, 18, 22.
duck, 19.
dug, *see* dig, 28.
dull, 26, 27.
dumb, 42.
during, 21, 22.
dust, 16, 18.
duster, 16.
dusty, 16.

each, 10, 20, 23.
ear, 17, 25.
early, 19, 21, 22.
earth, 25.
ease, 37.
east, 27*.
eastern, 27*.
easy, 23, 25.
eat, 6, 10, 11, 28, 28*.
eatable, 35*, *p.* 162.
eaten, *see* eat, 28.
edge, 31, 39.
edition, *p.* 5.
*e. g.*, 19.
egg, 19.
eight, 8.
eighteen, 13.
eighth, 8.
eighty, 13.
either, 34.
elder, 14*.
eldest, 37.
eleven, 11.
eleventh, 11.
else, 28, 32, 35.
empire, 34.
empty, *v.*, 31, 31*; *a.*, 31.
end, 13, 14.
England, 4.
English, 4.
enjoy, 39, 43.
enough, 25.
enter, 40, 43.
envelope, 33.
especially, 31, 42.
*etc.* 7, 16, 16*, 20.
even, 27, 36, 38.
evening, 11, 12, 15.
ever, 21, 22.
ever so, 22, 32.
evergreen, 15.
every, 20.
everybody, 31.
everyday, 38.
everyone, 42.
everything, 28, 29, 34.
everywhere, 20.
exactly, 35.
example, 4 C.
except, 13, 15.
excite, 21.
exclaim, 24.
explain, 30.
eye, 17, 25.

face, 17.
fail, 40, 42.
fair, 16.
fairy, 30.
fairyland, 30.
fairy tale, 35.
fall, 14, 15, 16, 22*.
fall asleep, 23.
fallen, *see* fall, 22.
family, 6, *f.*
far, 26, 28, 40.
farm, 18.
farmer, 18, 19, 35, 36, 37.
farthing, 26.
fast, 28, 30.
fasten, 27.
fat, 38.
father, 1, *f.*
father-in-law, 25*.
fear, *v.*, 44*; n., 44.
feather, 19, 22.
February, 13.
feed, 19.
feel, 31, 31*, 43, 44.
feeling, 31.
feet, *see* foot, 18*.
fell, 35.
fell, *see* fall, 22.
fellow, 41.
felt, *see* feel, 31.
feminine, 44 B.
fence, 43.
festival, 43.
fetch, 24.

few, 27, 31, 33.
field, 18, 20.
field-mouse, 30.
fifteen, 13.
fifth, 5.
fifty, 13.
fight, *v.*, 27*, 29, 29*; *n.*, 27.
figure, 13, 39.
fill, 34, 35, 40.
find, 27, 27*, 29, 30.
find out, 39.
fine, 22, 23, 24.
finger, 10, 35, 37.
finish, 28, 29, 30.
fire, 11.
firm, 28, 36.
first, 1, *f.*
fish, *v.*, 23; *n.*, 22, 22*, 23.
fisherman, 32, 43.
five, 5.
flag, 30.
flesh, 18.
flew, *see* fly, 31.
flight, 44.
float, 30, 32.
flock, 35.
floor, 29, 35, 38.
florin, 26.
flower, 13, 15, 20.
flown, *see* fly, 31.
fly, 19, 19*, 20, 30, 31, 31*.
foam, 32.
fog, 14.
fold, 43, 44.
folks, 32, 34.
follow, 38.
fond, 20, 21, 22.
food, 6, 10.
fool, 41.
foolish, 41.
foot, 18, 18*.
foot (12 inches), 43.
for, *prep.*, 4, 10, 11; *c.*, 23.
forehead, 17.
forget, 37, 37*, 40, 44.
forgot, *see* forget, 37.
forgotten, *see* forget, 37.
fork, 39.
fortunate, 28, 36, 40.
fortune, 28*, 35, 36.
forty, 13.
forward, 18.
fought, *see* fight, 29.
found, *see* find, 27.
four, 4.
four-footed, 22 F.
fourteen, 13.
fourth, 4.
fowl, 19.
fox, 22, 22*, 23, 25.
fragrance, 43, 44.
fragrant, 43*, 44.
free, 35, 44.
freedom, 44.
freeze, 14, 14*, 23, 23*.
fresh, 19.
Friday, 7.
friend, 14, 15, 17.
friendly, 38.
frighten, 28, 35, 40.
from, 12, 13, 15.
front, 37, 43.
frost, 29.
froze, *see* freeze, 23.
frozen, *see* freeze, 23.
fruit, 13, 14, 16, 19.
fulfil, 35, 35*.
full, 30*, 33.
funny, 30, 42.
*future*, 24*.

gallop, *v.*, *n.*, 33.
game, 24.
garden, 4, 6, 12, *f.*
gather, 40, 42.
gave, *see* give, 22.
geese, *see* goose, 19.
*genitive*, 5*.
gentleman, 42.
get, 22, 26*.
get home, 41.
get in, 27.
get on, 28, 29, 35.
get out, 38.
get up, 27.
girl, 1, *f.*
give, 6, 6*, 8, 22*, *f.*
give up, 37.
given, *see* give, 22.
glad, 22, 24.
glass, 33.
glide, 30.
glitter, 26.
glow-worm, 30.
go, 7, *f.*; 22*.
go away, 43.
go by, 36, 37, 42.
go off, 33.
go on, 23, 30, 35, 36, 36*, 37.
go out, 41, 44.
go to pieces, 38.
go to sleep, 32, 43.

God, 37, 43, 44.
going to, 26, 30, 31, 33.
gold, 26, 32, 35.
golden, 26*, 43.
goldsmith, 35.
gone, *see* go, 22.
good, 5, *f.*; 16*, 19*.
good-bye, 23.
good-for-nothing, 38.
good morning, 19.
good night, 31.
goose, 19, 19*.
got, *see* get, 26.
grand, 43.
grandchild, 9.
granddaughter, 9.
grandfather, 9.
grandmother, 9.
grandpapa, 33.
grandparent, 9.
grandson, 9.
Granny, 29, 30.
grass, 6, 15, 18.
grave, 37, 44.
great, 14, 15, 18.
Great Britain, 34.
green, 13, 14, 15.
grew, *see* grow, 31.
grey, 17, 25.
grocer, 37.
ground, 13, 14, 15.
grow, 15, 31, 31*, 33, 35.
grown, *see* grow, 31.
guard, 27.
guess, 34.

habit, 29.
had, 17, 17*, *f.*
hair, 16, 17, 18.
hairbrush, 16.
half, 12, *f.*
half an hour, 12, 13.
half-crown, 26.
half-hour, 12*.
half-open, 40.
half-past, 12, 13.
half-penny, 26.
half-sovereign, 26.
hammer, 38, 40.
hand, 10, 17.
handkerchief, 27.
handsome, 25.
hang, 38, 38*.
happen, 41, 42.
happiness, 15.
happy, 15, 15*, 21*, 23.
hard, 27, 28, 36.
hardly, 28, 35.
harm, *v.*, 40*; *n.*, 40, 44.
harmful, 40*.
harness, 30.
harvest, 36.
has, 2, *f.*
haste (make), 30, 33.
hasten, 35.
hat, 40.
have, 2, 2*, *f.*; 17*.
have to, 32, 37, 38, 39.
hay, 24.
he, 1, *f.*; 5*.
head, 16, 17, 19, 23.
headache, 40.
health, 28*.
healthy, 28, 37.
heap, 24.
hear, 17, 20, 22, 24*.
heard, *see* hear, 24.
heart, 28*, 36.
hearty, 28.
heat, 14.
heavy, 18.
held, *see* hold, 27.
help, *v.*, 35, 39, 44; *n.*, 35.
helper, 39.
hen, 19.
her *(acc.)*, 5, *f.*,
her, *a.*, 3, *f.*
here, 11 C, 19, 20, 21.
herring, 32.
hers, 31*.
herself, 24*.
hid, *see* hide, 43.
hidden, *see* hide, 43.
hide, 43, 43*.
high, 28, 33, 35.
highway, 33.
hill, 18.
him, 5, *f.*
himself, 24*.
hind legs, 39.
his, 3, *f.*; 31*.
hive, 20, 22.
hold, 10, 23, 25, 27*.
hole, 21, 23, 25.
home, *n.*, 22, 25; *adv.*, 12, 18, 22, 25.
home (at), 22.
home-made, 28.
honey, 20.
honour, *v.*, 43*, 44; *n.*, 43.
honourable, 43*.
hop, 38, 38*, 43.
hope, *v.*, 26, 29, 33; *n.*, 26*.

hopeful, 26*.
horse, 18.
hot, 11, 13, 15, 15*.
hour, 12, 13, 18.
house, 3, 3*, 4, 18.
how, 15, 22, 23.
how are you? 22.
how do you do? 23.
however, 15.
how many, 4, 5, *f.*
hundred, 13.
hung, *see* hang, 38.
hunger, 22.
hungry, 22.
husband, 9, 25.

I, 1, *f.*; 5*.
ice, 14, 23.
idle, 38.
if, 12, 16, 17.
if (= whether), 34.
ill, 40.
I'll, 24, 24*.
I'm, 22, 22*.
imagine, 40, 41, 43, 44.
immediately, 42.
*imperative*, 7*.
*imperfect*, 17*.
impossible, 28, 35, 38.
imprison, 44.
in, *prep.*, 3, *f.*; *adv.* 8.
inch, 43*.
indeed, 23, 25, 33.
*indefinite*, 1*.
*indirect*, 31*.
indoors, 24.
industrious, 35, 36.
industry, 35*.
*infinitive*, 4*.
inhabitant, p. 161.
ink, 10.
insect, 20.
inside, 43.
instance (for), 19, 20.
instead of, 44.
interesting, 24.
*interrogative*, 16*.
interrupt, 30.
into, 3, 8*, 13, 14, 17.
invite, 26, 35.
iron, 38.
*irregular*, 39.
is, 1, *f.*
island, 28, 34.
it, 3, *f.*; 19*.
its, 19, 39.
it's, 23, 23*.
itself, 24*.
I've, 22, 22*.

jam, 20.
January, 13.
jerk! 23.
jingle, 36.
journey, 28.
joy, 39*, 43, 44.
jug, 20.
July, 14.
jump, 26, 28, 40.
June, 13.
just, 23, 24, 32, 36.

keep, 26, 26*, 28.
keep back, 31.
keep (doing), 36, 36*.
kept, *see* keep, 26.
key, *p.*, 197.
kind, 16, 20.
king, 30, 36, 44.
kiss, *v.*, 27*, 43; *n.*, 27, 30, 31.
kitchen, 11.
kitten, 20.
knew, *see* know, 22.
knife, 39, 39*, 43, 44.
knock, 38, 40.
know, 22, 22*, 25, 44.
known, *see* know, 22.

label, 27.
lady, 42, 42*.
lady-bird, 30.
laid, *see* lay, 21.
lain, *see* lie, 29.
lamb, 18.
lamp, 30.
land, 36.
lane, 40.
lap, 27, 29.
large, 26, 34, 35.
lark, 43, 44.
last, 22.
last (at), 35, 37, 38, 41.
late, 33, 35, 42.
Latin, 12.
laugh, 32, 35, 40.
lay, 19, 21, 21*.
lay, *see* lie, 29.
lazy, 41, 42.
lead, *v.*, 38, 38*.
lead pencil, 10, 16.
leaf, 15, 15*, 20.
lean, 40.
leap year, 13.
learn, 4, 29, 29*, 43.
learnt, *see* learn, 29.
least, 25*.
least (at), 25.

leave, 22, 22*, 26.
leaves, *see* leaf, 15.
led, *see* lead, 38.
left, 17, 18.
left, *see* leave, 22.
leg, 6, 10.
leg of mutton, 41.
less, 8, 9, 13, 25*.
lesson, 1, *f.*
let, 27, 27*, 29, 30.
let go, 27, 41.
letter, 33.
letter (of alphabet), 34.
letter box, 33.
lie, 6, 10, 19, 29*.
life, 25, 36, 39, 39*.
lift, 42.
light, *n.*, 8, 12, 25.
light, *a.* (colour), 16.
light, *a.* (weight), 18.
light, *v.*, 30, 34, 40.
like, *v.*, 20, 22, 24.
like, *prep.*, 17, 20.
limb, 31.
line, 30, 33, 39.
lip, 17.
list, 39 C, 44 M.
listen, 32, 35, 43.
little, 8, 8*, 18, 23, 25*.
live, 3, 4, 15.
living, *n.*, 41.
loaf, 37, 37*.
loaves, *see* loaf, 37.
lock, *v.*, 33, 35.
long, *a.*, 11, 12, 13, 14*.
long, *v.*, 28.
longer (no), 14, 15.
look (at), 22, 24, 25.
look (for), 40.
look (= seem), 26, 31, 34, 35.
lose, 41, 41*, 44.
loss, 41*, 44.
lost, *see* lose, 41.
lot, 23.
loud, 33, 44.
love, *v.*, 4, 5, 17, 25; *n.*, 38.
lovely, 13, 14, 20.
low, 17 A, 33.
lower, 17.
luggage, 27.
lunch(eon), 11*.

made, *see* make, 16, 22.
maid, 16.
make, 15, 16, 17, 22, 22*.
man, 1, *f.*; 18*.
manage, 42.
many, 4, *f.*
maple, 24.
March, 13.
marriage, 25*.
marry, 25.
mat, 21.
match, 40.
May, 13.
may, 33*.
me, 5, *f.*
meadow, 15, 18, 24.
meal, 11.
mean, 30, 30*, 31, 32.
means of (by), 40.
meant, *see* mean, 30.
meanwhile, 27, 33, 36.
meat, 18.
meet, 31, 31*, 42.
melt, 14.
men, *see* man, 18.
merry, 28, 40.
met, *see* meet, 31.
mice, *see* mouse, 21.
middle, 11, 12, 13.
midnight, 31.
might, *see* may, 33, 33*, 36, 43.
might, *n.*, 25*.
mighty, 25.
mile, 43, 43*.
milk, 18, 19, 20.
mill, 42.
miller, 42.
mine, 31*, 44.
minus, 20 E.
minute, 13.
miow! 21.
misfortune, 35.
Miss, 9.
miss, *v.*, 33.
mist, 14.
mistake, 27, 36.
Mister, 9.
Mistress, 9.
mistress, 26.
misty, 32.
moment, 21.
Monday, 7.
money, 35, 36, 41.
month, 13, 14.
moon, 8, 12.
moonlight, 30.
more, 8, *f.*
morning, 7, 11, 12.
most, 18, *f.*
mother, 1, *f.*
mother-in-law, 25*.
mountain, 17.
mourn, 44*.

mournful, 44.
mouse, 21, 21*, 23.
moustache, 17.
mouth, 17, 25.
move, 27, 44.
Mr., 9.
Mrs., 9.
much, 5, 8*, 13.
must, 20, 20*, 25.
mutton, 18.
my, 5, 5*, *f.*
myself, 24*.

nail, 38, 40.
name, *v.*, 32; *n.*, 7, 20.
near, 20, 23, 24.
nearly, 22.
neck, 31.
needle, 38, 39.
*negative*, 4*.
neighbour, 35, 37.
neither, 34, 42.
nephew, 9.
nest, 19, 25.
net, 32.
never, 22, 25.
new, 14.
New Year, 14.
next, 11, 13, 14.
nice, 30, 32, 34, 36.
nickel, 26.
niece, 9.
night, 8, 11, 12.
nine, 9.
nineteen, 13.
ninety, 13.
ninth, 9.
no, 2, *f.*
no, *a.*, 8, 10, 11.
noble, 43.
noise, 35, 39.
*nominative*, 5*.
none, 26, 29.
noon, 12.
no one, 21, 25.
nor, 34, 42.
north, 27*.
northern, 27*.
nose, 17.
not, 2, *f.*
not at all, 40.
nothing, 25.
notice, *v.*, 43, 44; *n.*, 43.
*noun*, 1*.
November, 14.
now, 4, 8, 9.
now and then, 40.
nowhere, 29.
number, 13, 18.

oak, 35.
Oberon, 30.
oblige, 25.
o'clock, 12, 19, 22.
October, 14.
of, 4*, 5, *f.*
of course, 25.
off, 32, 33, 38.
offer, *v.*, 25; *n.*, 25*.
office, 26, 37.
often, 6, 8, 14.
oh! 21.
oh, dear! 23.
old, 9, 14, 14*, 17, 37*.
on, 6, 7, 10.
once, 17, 21, 25.
once (at), 33, 35.
once (all at), 44.
one, 1, *f.*; *pron.*, 20.
only, *a.*, 34, 38; *adv.*, 4, *f.*
on to, 21, 31.
open, *v.*, 8, 13, 21, 38, 39; *a.*, 8.
opposite, 10*.
or, 2, *f.*
ordinary, 25.
other, 7, *f.*; 15*.
ought to, 39, 41, 42.
our, 5, *f.*
ours, 31*, 36.
ourselves, 24*.
out, 20.
out of, 21, 23.
out of doors, 13.
outside, 43.
over, *prep.*, 22; *adv.*, 43, 44.
own, 25.
ox, 18, 18*.

pack, 26.
page, 24.
paid, *see* pay, 26.
paint, 16.
pale, 17.
pant, 44.
paper, 16.
parents, 4, 5, 6.
part, 1, 7, 17, 20.
*participle*, 4*.
party, 28, 42.
pass, 18, 25.
*passive*, 26*.
past, 12, 13, 18.
*past participle*, 7*.
pat, 41.
pay, 26, 26*.
pear, 14.
pear-tree, 14.
peel, *v.*, 39; *n.*, 39*.
peep, 31.
pen, 10, 16.
pencil, 10, 16.
penny, 26, 26*, 37.

peony, 43.
people, 19, 20.
*perfect*, 21*.
perhaps, 25.
*personal*, 5*.
persuade, 36, 37.
petal, 43, 44.
phonetic, *p.* 163.
pick, 40.
picture, 4, 5, 8, 9.
piece, 19, 25.
pieces (go to), 38.
pin, 38.
pipe, 34, 35, 37.
place, *v.*, 20, 20*; *n.*, 22.
plate, 39.
platform, 27.
play, 4, 7, 12.
pleasant, 40, 43.
please, *v.*, 28, 36.
please! 23, 24, 25.
pleasure, 28.
plenty, 22.
plough, *v.*, 35; *n.*, 35*.
plum, 14.
plum-tree, 14.
*pluperfect*, 21*.
*plural*, 1*.
*plus*, 5, 7.
*p. m.*, 12.
pocket, 36, 41.
poem, 29.
pond, 22, 23.
poor, 23.
porridge, 39, 41.
porter, 26, 27, 28.
*positive*, 8*.
possible, 28, 40.
post, 33.
postcard, 37.
postman, 33.
post office, 37.
potato, 39, 39*.
pound (£), 26, 37.
pound (weight), 37.
pour, 20.
preface, *p.* 5.
*preposition*, 3*.
present, 24.
*present*, 4*.
pretty, 32, 44.
prison, 44*.
prisoner, 44.
probably, 26, 27.
promise, *v.*, 31, 32, 37; *n.*, 31*, 40.
*pronoun*, 2*.
pronounce, 1 A, *f.*
pronunciation, *p.* 163.
proverb, 13, *f.*
pudding, 39.
puff, 43.
pull, *v.*, *n.*, 23.
pure, 19.
pussy, 21.
put, 17, 17*, 27*.
put on, 27, 37.

quarrel, *v.*, 29, 29*, 38, 39; *n.*, 29*.
quarrelsome, 29*.
quarter, 12.
question, 5.
quick, 21, 23.
quiet, 26, 28, 29.
quite, 9, 12, 13.

rabbit, 22, 23.
railway, 26, 42.
rain, *v.*, 13; *n.*, 13, 15, 18.
ran, *see* run, 21.
rat, 21, 24, 25.
rather, 25.
rattle! 39.
ray, 39, 43.
reach, 28, 33, 35.
read, 10, 24, 24*.
ready, 27, 28, 40.
real, 39.
really, 39, 40, 41, 43.
reason, 36*, 44.
reasonable, 36.
receive, 26, 41.
recite, 29, 30.
recover, 43.
red, 13, 15, 17.
refresh, 44.
regret, *v.*, 36, 36*, 44; *n.*, 36*.
*regular*, 39*.
relation, 9, 25*.
*relative*, 16*.
remember, 26, 36.
remembrance, 37.
remind, 44.
reply, *v.*, *n.*, 25.
re-sole, 37.
respect, *v.*, *n.*, 25*.
respectable, 25.
rest, *v.*, 30*, 31; *n.*, 30, 38.
rest (=the others), 38.
return, *v.*, 24*; *n.*, 24.
reverence, 43.
reward, *v.*, 35; *n.*, 35*.
rich, 42, 43.
riches, 42.
ridden, *see* ride, 33.
riddle, 34.
ride, 33, 33*.
right, 17, 18, 25.
right (all), 22.

right (= quite), 29.
ring, 35, 36, 37.
ripe, 13, 14.
ripen, 14.
rise, 28, 28*, 31, 35.
risen, *see* rise, 28.
river, 32.
road, 18.
roadside, 43.
rock, 32.
rod, 43*.
rode, *see* ride, 33.
rogue, 32.
roof, 19, 20.
room, 8, 9, 10.
rose, *n.*, 13, 13*, 15.
rose, *see* rise, 28.
round, *a.*, 39, p. 162.
round, *prep.*, 28, 30, 31; *adv.*, *p.* 162.
row, 43.
rude, 38.
ruffle, 32.
run, 21, 21*, 23, 24.

sad, 44.
sadness, 44.
safe, 29, 31.
said, *see* say, 21.
sail, *v.*, 28*, 32; *n.*, 28, 32.
same, 15, 16.
sand, 28.
sandy, 26.
sang, *see* sing, 31.
sat, *see* sit, 23.
Saturday, 7.
sauce, 22.
saucer, 20.
saw, *see* see, 20.
say, 5, *f.*; 21*.
scarcely, 35, 35*, 38.
scatter, 40, 44.
school, 7, 10, 12.
schoolroom, 11.
scissors, 38.
scratch, 41.
sea, 28, 32, 33.
seaside, 26.
season, 11.
seat, 27, 29.
second, 2.
section, *p.* 163.
see, 4, *f.*; 21*.
see to, 27.
seem, 26, 32, 33, 35.
seen, *see* see, 21.
seldom, 17, 22.
self, 24, 27.
self-done, 24.
sell, 26, 26*.
send, 33, 33*, 37, 40.
sent, *see* send, 33.
sentence, 16*.
separate, 27, 43.
September, 14.
serious, 25.
set, 33, 33*, 43.
set free, 35.
seven, 7.
seventeen, 13.
seventh, 7.
seventy, 13.
several, 8, 9, 18.
sew, 38.
shade, 40.
shady, 40.
shake 44, 44*.
shaken, *see* shake, 44.
shall, 24, 24*, *f.*; 36, 36*, *f.*
shan't, 29.
sharp, 21.
she, 1, *f.*; 5*.
sheep, 18, 18*.
shilling, 26.
shine, 8, 8*, 12, 15, 26, 26*.
ship, 28, 33.
shoe, 32.
shoemaker, 37, 40.
shone, *see* shine, 26.
shook, *see* shake, 44.
shop, *v.*, 37, 37*; *n.*, 35.
shore, 43.
short, 11, 13, 15.
should, *see* shall, 36, 36*, 37, 39.
shoulder, 35, 41, 42.
show, 35, 35*, 36.
shown, *see* show, 35.
shut, *v.*, 30, 30*; *a.*, 8, 17.
shutter, 35.
side, 18.
sigh, 43.
sight, 28, 30, 32.
silence, 43.
silent, 27 B, 43.
silly, 41.
silver, 26, 32, 36.
since, 36.
sing, 13, 31, 31*.
*singular*, 1*.
sister, 5, *f.*
sister-in-law, 25*.

sit, 10, 10*, 12, 23*.
six, 6.
sixpence, 26.
sixteen, 13.
sixth, 6.
sixty, 13.
size, 39.
skate, 14.
sky, 32, 32*, 33, 43.
sleep, *v.*, 12, 25, 29, 29*; *n.*, 30*, 31, 32.
sleepy, 30.
slender, 44.
slept, *see* sleep, 29.
slip, 33, 33*.
slow, 39, 42.
small, 3, 18, 19.
smell, 17.
smile, *v.*, 32, 36; *n.*, 32*, 40.
smoke, *v.*, 37, 40; *n.*, 40.
smooth, 25.
snow, 13, 14, 15.
snowball, 14, 20.
so, 5, *f.*
so (am I), 9, 9*, 10.
soak, 30.
soap, 10.
soft, 20, 21.
sold, *see* sell, 26.
sole, *v.*, 37*; *n.*, 37.
some, 8, 12, 13.
somebody, 42.
something, 23.
sometimes, 12, 13, 14.
son, 2, *f.*
son-in-law, 25.
song, 17.
soon, 14, 15, 16.
sorrow, 44.
sorry, 33.
sort, 34, 36, 43.
so that, 28.
sound, 38.
south, 27*.
southern, 27*.
sovereign, 26, 35.
sparrow, 19.
speak, 17, 25, 25*.
speckled, 30.
sped, *see* speed, 32.
speech, 25*.
speed, 32, 32*.
spend, 24, 24*.
spent, *see* spend, 24.
spider, 30.
spill, 41, 41*.
spilt, *see* spill, 41.
spoil, 41, 41*.
spoilt, *see* spoil, 41*.
spoke, *see* speak, 25.
spoken, *see* speak, 25.
spoon, 39.
spot, 30, 40.
spring, 11, 13, 15.
springtime, 14.
squirrel, 28, 40.
stalk, 43.
stamp, 33, 37.
stand, 6, 27, 27*.
stand up, 29.
star, 32, 33.
start, 35, 40, 42.
station, 26, 27, 28.
station-master, 42.
stay, 18, 19, 21.
stay up, 31.
step, *v.*, 42, 42*; *n.*, 42*.
stick, 40, 43.
stiff, 43.
still, 14, 15, 16.
stone, 28.
stood, *see* stand, 27.
stop, 28, 28*, 35, 37.
storm, 29*, 34.
stormy, 29, 33.
story, 22, 22*, 23, 24.
straight, 35, 43, 44.
strange, 35, 42.
straw, 19, 20.
street, 18.
stretch, *v.*, 28*, 44; *n.*, 28.
strike, 38, 38*, 39, 40.
string, 27, 41.
strong, 15, 18, 21.
struck, *see* strike, 38.
stupid, 41.
*substantive*, 1*.
such, 20, 22.
suddenly, 40.
suffer, 44.
sugar, 20.
suggest, 37, 40.
summer, 11, 14.
sun, 8, 12, 13.
sunbeam, 40.
Sunday, 7.
sung, *see* sing, 31.
sunshine, 44.
*superlative*, 18*.
supper, 11, 12.
suppose, 23.
sure, 23, 24, 25, 36.
sure (to be), 36.

surround, 43.
swallow, 19.
swam, *see* swim, 40.
sweep, 29, 29*.
sweet, 20.
swept, *see* sweep, 29.
swim, 19, 19*, 22, 23, 40, 40*.
swum, *see* swim, 40.
syllable, 34.

table, 10, 12, 16.
tail, 23.
take, 20, 22, 22*.
take care, 37.
taken, *see* take, 22.
tale, 24.
talk, *v.*, 35, 37, 38; *n.*, 35.
tea, 12, 24.
tea-table, 34.
tear, *v.*, 25, 25*.
tear, *n.*, 17.
teeth, *see* tooth, 16.
tell, 7, 8, 12, 21, 22*.
temper, 39, 43.
ten, 10.
tenth, 10.
terrible, 38, 43.
than, 8, *f.*,
thank, 37.
thankful, 43.
thank you, 22.
that, 5, *f.*; 10*.
that, *rel. pron.*, 18, *f.*
that, *c.*, 25, *f.*
the, 1, 1*, *f.*
their, 4, *f.*
theirs, 31*.
them, 5, *f.*
themselves, 24, 24*.
then, 7, 8, 10.
there, 3, *f.*
therefore, 18.
there is, are, 5, 5*, *f.*
these 9, 9*, *f.*
they, 1, *f.*; 5*.
they'd, 32.
thick, 14, 17, 22.
thick-headed, 43.
thin, 14, 14*, 17.
thing, 16, 18, 22.
think, 25, 25*.
third, 3.
thirst, 22*.
thirsty, 22.
thirteen, 13.
thirty, 13.
this, 5, *f.*; 9*.
thorn, 13.
those, 10, 10*, *f.*
though, 37, 39, 40.
thought, *see* think, 25.
thousand, 35.
thread, 38, 39.
three, 3.
threepence, 26.
threw, *see* throw, 32.
throat, 44.
through, *prep.*, 8, 12, 15; *adv.*, 40.
throw, 14, 32, 32*.
thrown, *see* throw, 32.
Thursday, 7.
thus, 42.
thick, 38.
ticket, 26.
ticket office, 26.
tide, 28, 33.
till, *prep.*, 12, 22; *c.*, 20.
time, 12, 15.
time(s) (three, etc.), 9, 11; 17, 23.
time-table, 27.
tin, 40.
tinkle, 30.
tip, 27.
tired, 31, 33, 38.
to, 5, *f.*
tobacco, 34, 40.
to be sure, 36.
to-day, 24.
together, 35, 38, 44.
told, *see* tell, 22.
to-morrow, 24.
tongue, 20.
too, 2, 5, 11.
too (old, etc.), 21.
took, *see* take, 22.
tooth, 16, 16*, 17, 21.
toothbrush, 16.
tore, *see* tear, 25.
torn, *see* tear, 25.
toss, 33.
towards, 43, 44.
town, 18, 19.
train, 27, 28, 33.
treasure, *v.*, 37; *n.*, 35.
tree, 5, 6, 13.
tremble, 44.
trifle, 36, 39.
trouble, *v.*, 28*; *n.*, 28, 34, 39.
troublesome, 28.
true, 25.
trundle bed, 32.
trunk, 26, 27.

try, 27, 27*, 32, 33.
Tuesday, 7.
tulip, 43, 44.
turn, *v.*, 30, 35, 37.
turn, *n.*, 26.
turn out, 41.
'twas, 29, 32.
twelfth, 12.
twelve, 12.
twentieth, 13.
twenty, 12.
twice, 4, 6, 8, 16.
twinkle, 32.
two, 2.

unable, 44.
uncle, 9, 22.
uncomfortable, 31.
under, 19, 24.
understand, 26, 36.
undress, 31.
unhappy, 17.
unlock, 33.
until, 25.
up, 12, 27, 29, 30, 40.
up and down, 33.
upon, 15, 20, 23, 25.
upper, 17.
upstairs, 31.
us, 5, *f.*
use, *v.*, 10, 16, 17.
use, *n.*, 36.
used to, 36, 36*, 37.
useful, 10, 16, 18, 18*.
usual, 40, 44.
utter, 37.

*verb*, 2*.
verse, 32.
very, 3, *f.*
village, 18.
visit, *v.*, 26*, 43; *n.*, 26.
voice, 31, 38, 44.
vowel, 34.

wait, 27, 28, 35.
waiting-room, 27.
wake up, 12, 23.
walk, *v.*, 6, 14, 23; *n.*, 13, 22.
wall, 8, 25.
want, 26, 31, 34, 36.
warm, 13, 14, 18.
was, 17, 17*, *f.*
wash, *v.*, 10; *n.*, 28.
watch, 40.
water, *v.*, 15, 20; *n.*, 10, 14, 15.
wave, *v.*, 27, 39; *n.*, 28, 32, 34.
way, 22, 25.
we, 1, *f.*; 5*.
weak, 15, 19, 25.
wealth, 37*.
wealthy, 37.
wear, 38, 38*, 40.
weather, 11, 14, 15.
Wednesday, 7.
wee, 32, 38.
week, 7.
weekday, 7.
weep, 37, 37*, 44.
weigh, 35*.
weight, 35.
welcome, 42.
well, 16, 16*, 17, 19.
well (of health), 17, 22.
well! 22, 23.
we'll, 29.
went, *see* go, 22.
wept, *see* weep, 37.
were, 17, 17*, *f.*
west, 27.
western, 27*.
wet, *v.*, 28, 28*.
wet, *n.*, 30, 33.
wet, *a.*, 14.
what? 1, *f.*
what, 17, 17*.
wheel, 18.
when? 7, 7*, 19.
when, 10, 10*, 12, 13.
whenever, 28, 33.
where? 3, *f.*
wherever, 32.
which? 7, 7*, *f.*
which, 16, 16*, *f.*
while, *n.*, 40.
while, *c.*, 24.
whilst, 43.
white, 13, 16, 17.
who? 1, *f.*
who, 16, 16*, *f.*
whole, 23, 25.
whom? 4, *f.*
whose? 9, 9*.
why? 8, 21, 22.
why, 23.
wife, 9, 25.
will, 24, 24*, *f.*; 27*.
willingly, 44.
wind, 15, 25.
window, 8, 12, 13.
wine, 35.
wing, 19.
winter, 11.
wisdom, 25.
wise, 25.
wish, *v.*, 24, 25; *n.*, 24*, 25.
with, 4, *f.*

wither, 44.
without, 13.
woman, 1, 18, 18*.
wonder, *v.*, 32*, 34, 39; *n.*, 32*.
wonderful, 32, 35.
won't, 24, 24*.
wood, 16, 19, 20.
wood (trees), 15, 18, 22.
wooden, 16, 21.
wool, 18.
woollen, 18.
wore, *see* wear, 38.
word, 16*, 17, 20, 25.
work, *v.*, 4, 5, 7; *n.*, 12, 20.
work-basket, 38.
world, 25.
worm, 19.
worn, *see* wear, 38.
worry, 36.
worse, 33, 33*.
worst, 33*.
worth, 35.
would, *see* will, 27, 27*.
write, 10, 16, 33, 33*.
written, *see* write, 33.
wrong, 25.
wrote, *see* write, 33.

yard, 43*.
year, 11, 13, 14.
yellow, 14, 19.
yes, 2, *f.*
yesterday, 21, 22.
yet, 30, 34, 35, 44.
you, 1, *f.*; 5*.
you know, 24.
you'll, 29.
you see, 22.
young, 9, 19, 25.
your, 5, 5*.
yours, 31, 31*.
yourself, 24*.
yourselves, 24*.

---

# CONTENTS

| | Page |
|---|---|
| Preface | 5 |
| Names | 7 |
| First Part (Lessons 1—9) | 9 |
| Second Part (Lessons 10—17) | 27 |
| Third Part (Lessons 18—25) | 51 |
| Fourth Part (Lessons 26—33) | 82 |
| Fifth Part (Lessons 34—44) | 115 |
| Appendix I (Place Names) | 161 |
| Appendix II (Abbreviations) | 162 |
| Phonetic Section | 163 |
| Key to the Pronunciation | 197 |
| Vocabulary | 211 |

Punane taft.
Suffit kaised
kurt mnot-pinaste Impidiga.
krae sama
all pael kusti pliesseuritud.

EstA
16938

HIND 2 KR. 25 S.